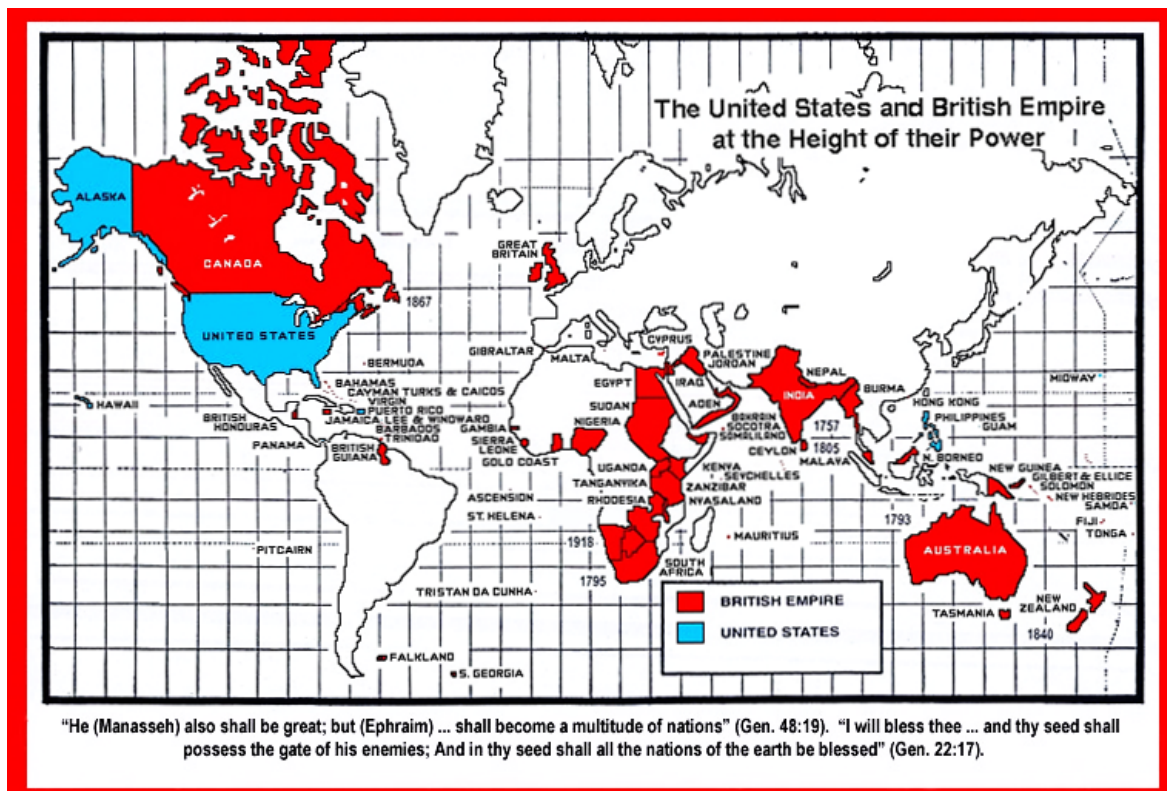
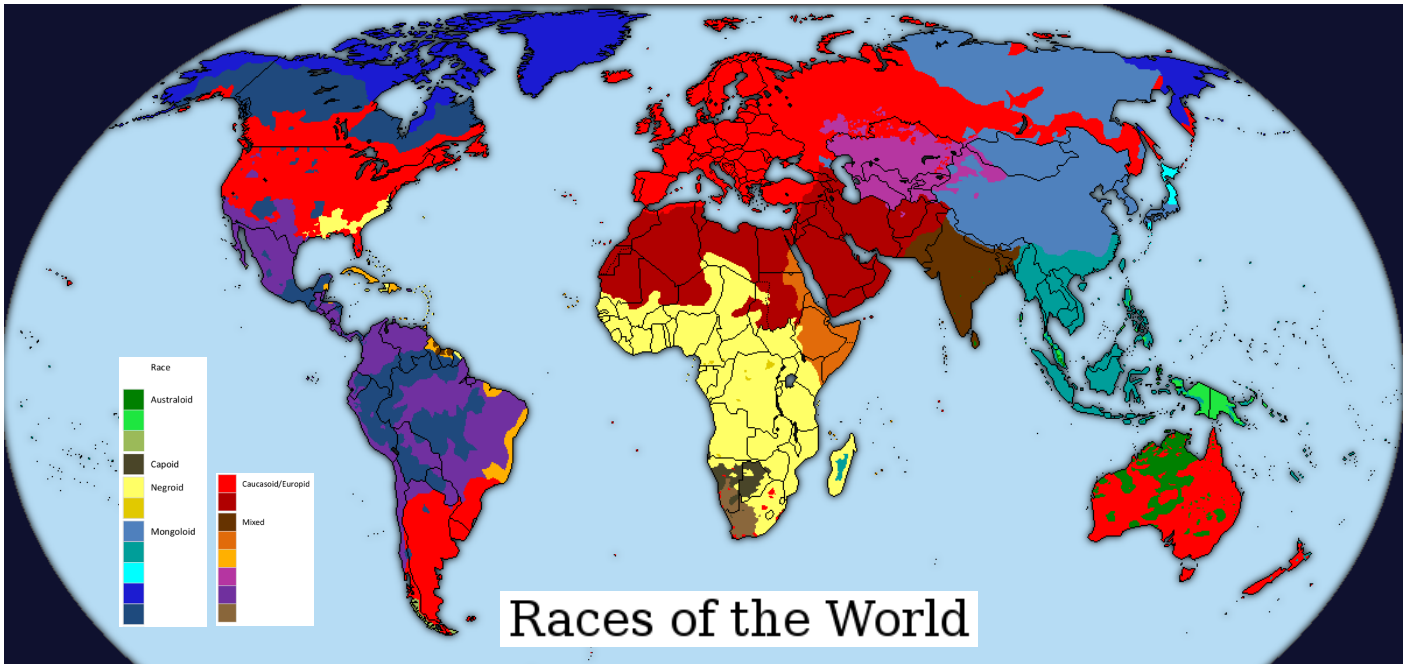


A BIBLE TITLE SEARCH OF THE LANDS OF THE WORLD



ROGER WAITE

A BIBLE TITLE SEARCH OF THE LANDS OF THE WORLD

Roger Waite

Table of Contents

Introduction.....	3
Early Migrations from Babel	5
Lands Granted to the Descendants of Abraham	6
Edom's Inheritance.....	8
Moab's Inheritance.....	11
Ammon's Inheritance.....	11
The Inheritance of Abraham's Sons with Keturah.....	12
Ishmael's Inheritance	12
Israel's Land Inheritance	13
The Migrations of the Peoples of the World	18
The Migrations of the Tribes of Israel	34
The Birthright Promised to the Sons of Joseph	51
The European Age of Discovery and Colonialism	58
The United States of America.....	82
Canada	95
South Africa.....	104
Australia	121
New Zealand	136
The Land Dispute Between the Jews and Palestinians	142
The Millennium and Beyond.....	151

A BIBLE TITLE SEARCH OF THE LANDS OF THE WORLD

Introduction

In the Middle East today we see a major dispute over land title to the land of Israel or Palestine between the Israelis and the Palestinians. In the nations settled by the English speaking peoples there have been disputes over who owns those lands between the indigenous peoples and the English speaking peoples who have colonised those lands. What does the Bible say about who owns these lands and other nations across the world?

When I was in my early twenties I worked for the Commonwealth Bank. One of my jobs was as a search clerk. It was my job to go to the Land Titles office each day and obtain photocopies of the government's copy of each land title or deed of properties upon which housing loans were being sought from the bank for property transactions. Before the bank would lend money it had to confirm who was the true owner of the land and what credit suppliers may have had a mortgage on the property which would give them a claim on the property if the owner defaulted on what they owed.

If we were to do a title search on the lands of the world such as the lands of the Middle East or even other lands such as our Western nations what information could we find to confirm just who owns these lands in God's eyes? Given the Bible is the revelation of the Creator of the earth what can we find in the Bible to confirm just who owns these lands?

God as Creator of the earth owns all and gives it to us as He sees fit. In Exodus 19:5 He says: "...for all the earth is mine."

When it comes to land titles in human society either the king or government owns all the land of a nation and its territories until specifically titled to individuals or companies. All land that is not specifically granted and titled to individuals and companies is referred to as crown land in British commonwealth countries. Many of the kings of Europe felt that they had a divine right to rule given to them by God and were His agent on earth. This flowed on with how they distributed land. In Texas, which was originally claimed by Spain before American settlers moved in, the chain of title for many properties (the record of who previously owned a piece of land) goes right back to the kings of Spain.

There's an old expression that possession is nine-tenths of the law. This is not the case with human land laws. If people settle on land that hasn't been titled by the government or the king in human law they do not own the land and they are referred to as squatters.

This principle also applies with God's law. God owns the earth and He gives it to who He wills. Tribes of people can settle in parts of the earth but that doesn't automatically give them ownership of the land in God's eyes no matter how long they have lived there as God is Creator and the ultimate owner of the earth. Only those to whom God grants that land truly own it. That said, we will see that God is generous with how He does grant land.

A foundational verse with regards to how God has granted or titled the earth to various peoples is found in **Deuteronomy 32:8** which says: "When the most High **divided to the nations their inheritance**, when he separated the sons of Adam, **he set the bounds of the people** according to the number of the children of Israel."

We read here God sets the boundaries of the peoples and divided to the nations their inheritance. God has done this but how can we tell what those boundaries are of the national inheritances that He has granted or titled to them?

In **Acts 17:26** we read: "And He has made all nations of men of one blood to dwell on all the face of the earth, **ordaining fore-appointed seasons and boundaries of their dwelling.**"

National peoples have been ordained pre-appointed seasons and also boundaries of dwelling. The seasons could possibly mean times of national greatness as many different nations have had their season of greatness or empire. This ordaining of the boundaries of their dwelling strongly implies that God's guiding hand is involved in where each major group of people have ended up on this earth. I suspect that God has also had a hand in the development of the wonderful difference in the accents of the many different peoples around the world.

In relation to **Deuteronomy 32:8** and **Acts 17:26** Herman Hoeh wrote the following in his article "The Race Question" (Plain Truth, April 1957):

God gave the nations their separate inheritances. [In the early post-Flood world] Most people would not take their own inheritance. They wanted to ... make their own kind of ONE WORLD. They could have had one world then, with one language, IF THEY HAD BEEN OBEDIENT. But the people rebelled. They were not satisfied with separate inheritances. They did not want to be segregated. "So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence"- from Babel - "upon the face of all the earth. Therefore was the name of it called Babel; because the Lord did then confound the languages of all the earth" (**Genesis 11:8-9**)...

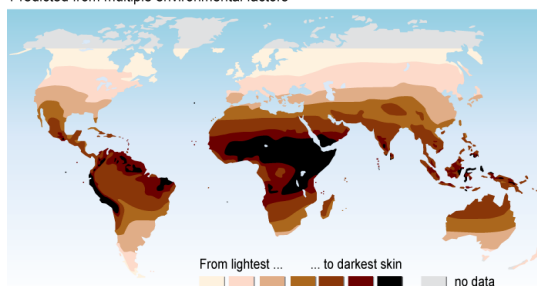
The very color of the skin makes it more tolerable for a Negro to withstand tropical climate. Whites were not meant to populate Central Africa. South Africa, however, does provide the type of climate suitable for Europeans...

Take the example of the Mongolians. Only in East Asia does the climate constantly vary from extremely hot to extremely cold. No other portion of the earth's surface presents such a variation in weather.

The Oriental was made exactly for that climate. His blood vessels are not so near the surface of the skin as among Whites. Hence the color of his skin. Mongolians do not therefore notice the extremes in climate.

Next, take the example of the Germans. They are an energetic people. They form the very heart of Europe. That is why God led them there - so that the whole of Europe could be efficiently and thoroughly integrated in its economy. Similar parallels may be drawn with all peoples, races and nationalities...Each of the primary races [white, black/brown and yellow] is separated by bodies of water, deserts or great mountain barriers (p.19, 22).

Skin colour map for indigenous people
Predicted from multiple environmental factors



Source: Chaplin G.®, Geographic Distribution of Environmental Factors Influencing Human Skin Coloration, American Journal of Physical Anthropology 125:292-302, 2004; map updated in 2007.

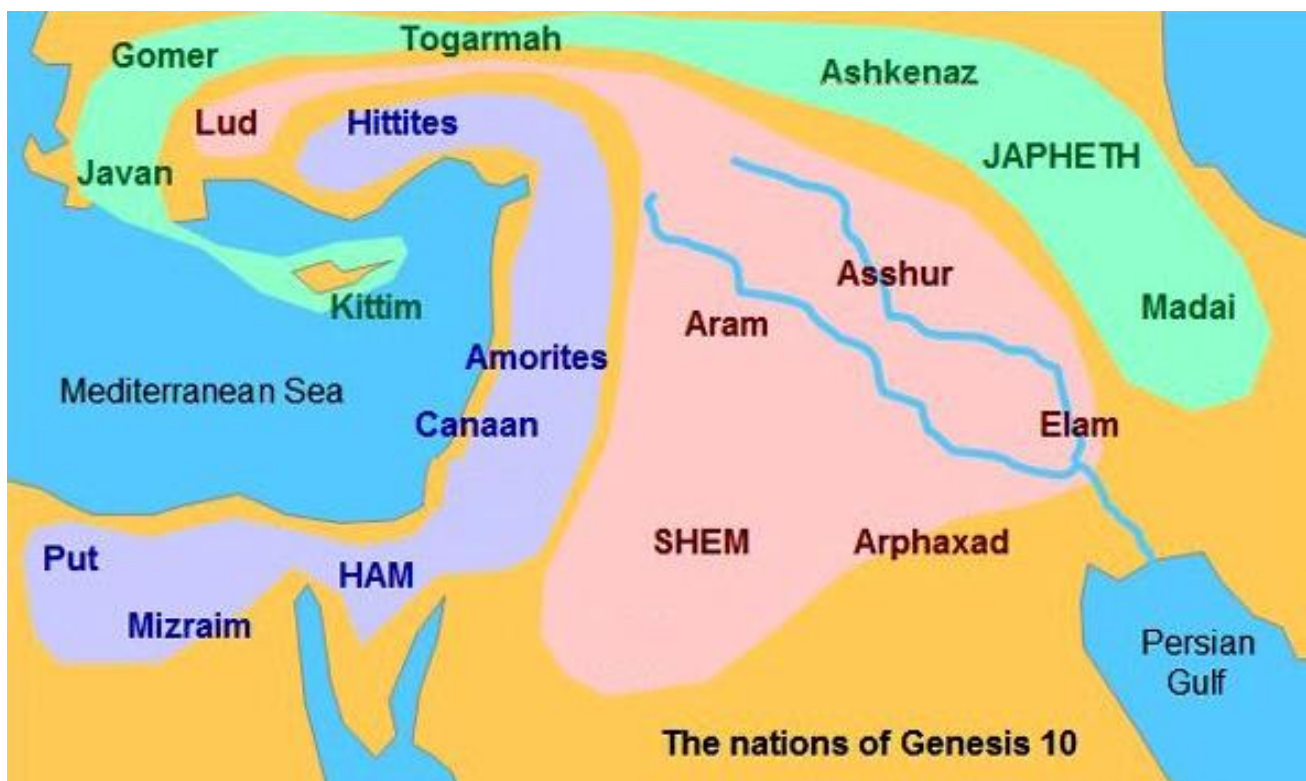
We see some general principles in how national peoples have been guided by God to the places that God has given to them as an inheritance.

One fairly clear principle is that the darker skinned peoples have been guided to the areas of the earth closer to the equator than the white peoples. People with darker brown and black skin have the skin pigment to withstand tropical weather far better than light skinned people who are far more at risk of skin cancer when living close to the equator.

This is evident with the Oriental peoples of Eastern Asia who vary in skin colour with the darker skinned peoples closer to the equator and progressively lighter skinned as you move further away from the equator. Indonesians, Malaysians and Philipinos have darker skin than other East Asian people such as the Chinese. The Japanese and Koreans have even lighter skin that matches the skin colour of Caucasian people. This is a principle that we'll look at later in regards to the areas settled by the English speaking peoples.

Early Migrations from Babel

In the time soon after the Tower of Babel was destroyed the early wave of migration looked similar to what is shown in the chart below:



Following the dispersion of the peoples from Babel, darker-skinned Canaanite tribes occupied the land today known as Palestine or Israel. It was referred to as the land of Canaan (**Genesis 11:31, 12:5, 13:12, 16:3, 17:8**) before the Israelites took possession of the land after the Exodus.

According to the Bible the Canaanites who dwelt in the land were not decreed that land by God. God either considered them as “squatters” or given only a short-term lease of the land before the true owners would take possession of the land. The Canaanites would later be driven out by the Israelites after the Exodus from Egypt after the Canaanites sins had become full.

Canaan was the son of Ham (meaning burnt), who was the ancestor of the black peoples of earth. Ham's descendants in Old Testament times also included Egypt (descended from Mizraim), Libyans (Put), the Canaanites and later the Arabs.

The Arabs descend from Ishmael, the son of Abraham through Sarah's handmaid, Hagar who was a Mizraimite (Egyptian). Ishmael was half Mizraimite through Hagar and later married a Mizraimite. Ishmael's descendants were three-quarters Mizraimite.

Arphaxad, the line of the son of Shem that Abraham was much closer to Aram than the above map shows. Abraham's home of Ur of the Chaldees (today's Sanilurfa near the Syria-Turkey border) was in the region of Padan-Aram (named after Aram). This original homeland of Abraham's family is noted many times such as **Genesis 25:20, 28:2 and 33:18**.

Joshua 24:2 states that Abraham's father lived on the other side of the great river Euphrates. Sanilurfa is on other side of the Euphrates than the land of Israel. The more famous Ur excavated by Woolley in southern Mesopotamia does not fit this clue as it is on the same side of the Euphrates as the land of Israel.

Lands Granted to the Descendants of Abraham

The father of the faithful, Abraham, was called out of Ur of the Chaldees. Around **1875 BC** God called Abraham out of Ur in Northern Mesopotamia to go to the land of Canaan or Palestine. He promised to make of him a great nation, a promise that was later expanded to many nations because of the faithfulness that Abraham showed to God (**Genesis 17:5-6**).

In **Genesis 15:18** we read: "In the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, **unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates.**"

To the descendants of Abraham was deeded all the land from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates.

In the next three verses God notes the tribes that were in the land at that time – "the Kenites, and the Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Rephaim [who were post-Flood giants], and the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Girgashites, and the Jebusites."

The Canaanites were descended from Ham's son Canaan and were brown to black skinned peoples. Among Canaan's sons descended the Sidonites, inhabitants of the Phoenician city of Sidon, the Jebusites, who inhabited Jerusalem (formerly Jebus) during the time of the Judges before conquered by David and also the Hittites.

The Hittites were descended from Canaan's son, Heth, who Abraham interacted with in Hebron. They are not to be confused with the imperial Hittites in Turkey who shared the same name. The Hittites descended from Heth would have been a brown skinned people. The imperial Hittites of Turkey spoke an Indo-European language and were the people of Tubal (Tabal) in the time of the Assyrian empire showing that they were a white people and different from the other Hittites. It is not clear which of the two groups that Uriah the Hittite and husband of Bathsheba was from.

The river of Egypt is translated as the brook of Egypt in other places. This river by many is usually assumed to be the Nile River but as we'll look at later is actually the Wadi El-Arish which has a catchment that roughly bisects the Sinai Peninsula and enters the Mediterranean half way between Israel and Egypt.

The other end of the land deeded to Abraham's descendants was the Euphrates River which was briefly the border of Israel in the time of kings David and Solomon.

The Mediterranean Sea formed the western border of the land deeded to Abraham's descendants and the eastern area of the land would have included the whole Arabian peninsula which is today settled by Abraham's descendants through Ishmael.

The descendants of Abraham are MORE than just the Israelites who descend from Abraham's grandson Jacob (Israel).

From Abraham have also come:

- The Arabs (from Abraham's son, Ishmael)
- The descendants of Abraham's second wife Keturah (including Midian).
- The Edomites (from Isaac's son Esau)

Lot was the nephew of Abraham (son of his brother) who settled in Sodom. In the wake of the Sodom and Gomorrah catastrophe Lot's daughters thought they were the only survivors on earth and made the bizarre choice to get their father drunk and have sex with him and both bore a son (**Genesis 19:30-38**).

Within the promised territory to all of Abraham's descendants God also made a special provision of land for the sons of Abraham's nephew Lot who were called Ammon and Moab.

Abraham was 75 when he left for the land of Canaan. God had promised them a son but God did not appear again for many years and so they took matters into their own hands. Abraham and his wife Sarah were getting quite old. As per an ancient custom when wives were barren, Sarah asked Abraham to beget a son for them with Sarah's servant girl, Hagar. She became pregnant and bore him a son named Ishmael. Ishmael became the father of the people who we call the Arabs (**Genesis 17:20**).

God told Abraham that the birthright promises would not go to Ishmael but instead would be passed on through a son that would come from Abraham's wife, Sarah (**Genesis 17:15-21**). Given that Sarah was already an old woman well beyond her childbearing years the birth of Isaac was truly a miracle from God.

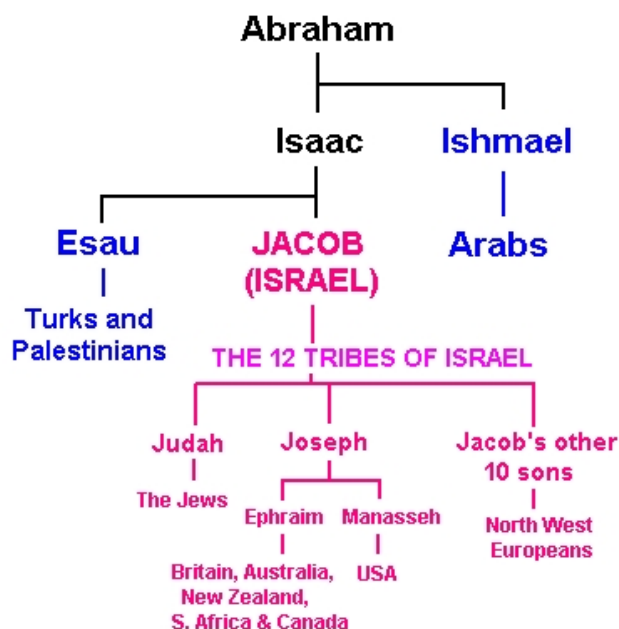
Abraham's first two sons were Ishmael (with Sarah's servant girl) and Isaac, the promised child through his wife Sarah.

Late in his life after Sarah died Abraham took another wife by the name of Keturah through whom he had 6 more sons (**Genesis 25:1-4**).

Isaac had two sons, Esau and Jacob (**Genesis 25:19-28**). As the oldest, Esau was entitled to the birthright but he did not value it and sold it to his brother Jacob (**Genesis 25:29-34**). Esau's descendants in time became the Turks and the Palestinians.

Israel was the name that God gave to Abraham's grandson, Jacob (**Genesis 32:28**) which means "Overcomer with God" or "Prince with God".

Jacob had 12 sons and from those sons descended the 12 tribes of Israel (**Genesis 35:22-26**). The Jews descend from Judah, one of the sons of Jacob. Only ONE of those 12 tribes are the Jewish people or the Jews as they are called (**Genesis 49:9-10**).



When it came to Jacob's descendants who would later go into captivity in Egypt, there would be a possession clause as to when God would give them the land mentioned in **Genesis 15:16**: "But in the fourth generation they shall come here again: for the iniquity of the Amorites *is not yet full*."

God wasn't prepared to dispossess the "squatters" until their iniquity was full plus Israel needed to grow enough to fill the land. We see God's mercy here in giving such people time to repent before He decrees their evil ways had gotten so bad they either had to be driven out or destroyed. The destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah was an early precursor of the punishment that would come on many of the inhabitants of the land who had effectively squatted in a land that God had promised to a different people.

Rousas John Rushdoony makes these comments in regards to the judgment that was pronounced against the Canaanites:

The Canaanites against whom Israel waged war were under judicial sentence of death by God. They were spiritually and morally degenerate. Virtually every kind of perversion was a religious act: and large classes of sacred male and female prostitutes were a routine part of the holy places.

Thus, God ordered all the Canaanites to be killed (Deuteronomy 2:34; 3:6; 20:16-18; Joshua 11:14), both because they were under God's death sentence, and to avoid the contamination of Israel.

Among related and adjacent peoples whose depravity was similar but not as total, men (Num. 31:7; Deuteronomy 1:1, 2, 16; 20:16, 17) and sometimes married women as well were killed (Numbers 31:17,18), but the young virgins were spared (Numbers 31:18).

With other foreign countries, of better calibre, any woman taken prisoner could be married, but could not be treated as a slave or as a captive (**Deuteronomy 21:10-14**), clearly indicating the difference in national character between Canaanites and other peoples.

Edom's Inheritance

Esau was the paternal twin of Jacob born to Isaac and Rebecca when Isaac was 60 years old. Esau and Jacob were twins but not identical twins. They had much different temperaments. Esau was a hairy man who was an outdoors man. Jacob was more a home body and likely a more academic type than an outdoors man (**Genesis 25:27**).

Esau's alternate name was Edom which his descendants went by (**Genesis 25:30, 32:3, 36:1, 8**). Edom means red. He married two darker skinned Hittite women from the line of Heth (The later imperial Hittites of Turkey appear to have been a different people than these Palestinian Hittites). Esau's descendants were a mixed race people. The Turks, who may have also descended from Edom, are lighter skinned than Arabs. There is a more Arab-like, brown skinned appearance amongst the Palestinians who descend in part from Esau (Edom). Herod the Great and his family were famous descendants of Edom.

In **Genesis 27:36** we read the following in relation to the story of Jacob and Esau: "For he (Jacob) has supplanted me (Esau) **these two times: he took away my birthright, and behold, now he has taken away my blessing.**"

Here we see a clear distinction between a birthright and a blessing. What is the difference between the two? On the La Vista Church of Christ website they give a very good explanation of the difference between the birthright and the blessing in the story of Esau and Jacob.

Birthright:

A birthright referred to a person's inheritance. For most of the world's history, the first born child of a family would receive an extra inheritance from his father. What would happen is that when a father died, they would count his surviving children and add one to the count. They would then divide the inheritance that many ways and the eldest child would get two portions. Thus, if a man died having three surviving children, his inheritance would be divided four ways. The eldest child would receive two-fourths (that is, one-half) of the estate, and the other two children would receive one-fourth of the estate each.

The birthright can be seen in this Mosaic law: "But he shall acknowledge the son of the unloved wife as the firstborn by giving him a double portion of all that he has, for he is the beginning of his strength; the right of the firstborn is his" (**Deuteronomy 21:17**). The double portion came as a right of birth; that is, by the right of being first born.

This is what Esau sold to Jacob for a bowl of red bean stew when he returned hungry from a hunting trip (**Genesis 25:29-34**). Now Isaac their father was a very wealthy man.

Esau gave up half of his inheritance (one-third of Isaac's estate) for a single bowl of red bean stew. This is why it is mentioned, "Thus Esau despised his birthright" (Genesis 25:34).

Though not commonly done, a birthright could be given to another son. For example, "Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel - he was indeed the firstborn, but because he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel, so that the genealogy is not listed according to the birthright; yet Judah prevailed over his brothers, and from him came a ruler, although the birthright was Joseph's" (**1 Chronicles 5:1-2**).

Because Reuben had sex with his father's concubine, Jacob took away his second portion and gave it to Joseph [the firstborn of his second and favourite wife Rachel]. He did this by making Joseph's own children count as his children. Since Joseph had two sons, those sons each got a portion of Jacob's estate; thus giving Joseph's family a double portion.

Blessing:

The family blessing was a way to designate who became the head of the extended family when the father died. Like the birthright, the blessing generally went to the eldest son but not always.

Again using Jacob's family, Reuben should have received the blessing, but because of his sin, he was skipped. Next in line was Simeon, but he and his brother Levi (third in line) had destroyed a town in anger over the rape of their sister. For that Jacob decided that they were not suitable to lead the family. Therefore, the blessing came to Judah.

Thus, in Jacob's family the person receiving the blessing [Judah, who had "the scepter" of rulership (Genesis 49:10)] and the person receiving the birthright (or double portion) [Joseph – Genesis 49:25-26] were two different people.

A change in the blessing also happened in Isaac's family. Before Isaac's twin sons were born, God said, "Two nations are in your womb, Two peoples shall be separated from your body; One people shall be stronger than the other, And the older shall serve the younger" (**Genesis 25:23**).

Because God placed the older son under the younger son, he was stating that the second born was to receive the blessing. Now Isaac in his old age decided to change this and give the blessing to his eldest son, Esau, anyway. However, his wife overheard his plan and arranged it so that Jacob tricked Isaac into thinking he was his brother. Thus Isaac gave the blessing to his second son, just as God said, even when he tried to go against God.

The blessing in Abraham's descendants was particularly important because God stated to Abraham that from his descendants the Savior of the world would come. The blessing followed the path of those who were Jesus' ancestors. Jesus was a descendant of Judah, who had received Jacob's blessing (**Hebrews 7:14**).

So we see here that Esau gave away his double portion (the birthright) to Jacob for a bowl of stew and Jacob became the designated head of the household once Isaac died following the deception that saw Isaac unknowingly give the blessing to Jacob when he intended to give it to Esau.

Following the deception regarding the blessing Esau asked his father "Have you not reserved a blessing for me? And Isaac answered and said to Esau, **Behold! I have made him your lord...** And what shall I do now to you, my son? And Esau said to his father, Have you but one blessing, my father? Bless me, me also, my father. And Esau lifted up his voice and wept. And Isaac his father answered and said to him, Behold! **Your dwelling shall be of the fatness of the earth and of the dew of heaven from above.** And by your sword you shall live, and shall serve your brother" (**Genesis 27:36-40**).

Esau would be under his younger brother. The ESV translates verse 39 as "'Behold, **away from** the fatness of the earth shall your dwelling be, and **away from** the dew of heaven on high.'" This translation is almost the opposite of the KJV and MKJV translation but is probably more accurate given that Esau's descendants were based close to Petra to the south and east of the Dead Sea.

After the Israelites left Mount Sinai during their Exodus from Egypt to the Promised land they gradually made their way north from Arabia to Ezion-geber where Elat is today at the top of the Gulf of Aqaba and then went to Kadesh-Barnea. It was from Kadesh-Barnea that the spies journeyed into the land and came back. When they murmured yet again against God He decreed that instead of entering the land within months of leaving Egypt they would wander for 40 years before God would let the next generation in.

Kadesh means holy and Barnea is thought to mean "place of wandering". It is usually located at Ein el Qudeirat in the middle of the Negev. This conflicts with where the Bible places Kadesh-Barnea. Kadesh-Barnea was on the edge of the territory of Edom.

Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom: "Behold, we are at Kadesh, a town on the edge of your territory" (**Numbers 20:16**). Edom's territory only extended as west as the Arabah valley at this time, the valley that goes south from the Dead Sea to the Red Sea. They only expanded west of this after the Jews went to Babylon. This places Kadesh-Barnea along the Arabah valley.

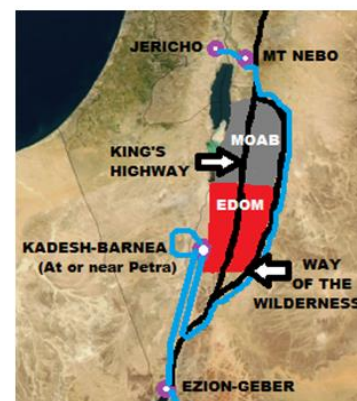
Deuteronomy 1:2 confirms this when it says that "There are 11 days journey from Horeb by the way of mount Seir unto Kadesh-Barnea."

If Kadesh-Barnea was at Ein el Qudeirat you would not take the way of mount Seir (the road up the Arabah valley up past Petra) you would take the north-western road away from the Arabah valley after reaching Ezion-Geber.

When they got the news back from the king of Edom that he declined their request to go through their land they had to head back south of Kadesh-Barnea around the southern edge of Edom's territory.

In **Deuteronomy 2:4-5** God said to them: "You are about to pass through the territory of your brothers, the people of Esau, who live in Seir; and they will be afraid of you. So be very careful. Do

THE ROUTE OF THE EXODUS



not contend with them, for I will not give you any of their land, no, not so much as for the sole of the foot to tread on, because I have given Mount Seir to Esau as a possession."

The area around Mount Seir (close to Petra) to the south and east of the Dead Sea was the land God gave as an inheritance to the descendants of Esau.

Moab's Inheritance

After telling the Israelites that the land around Mount Seir was Esau's land inheritance God goes on to tell them a few verses later in **Deuteronomy 2:9**:

"And the LORD said to me, **Do not besiege Moab, nor fight with them in battle. For I will not give you any of their land for a possession. Because I have given Ar to the sons of Lot for a possession.**"

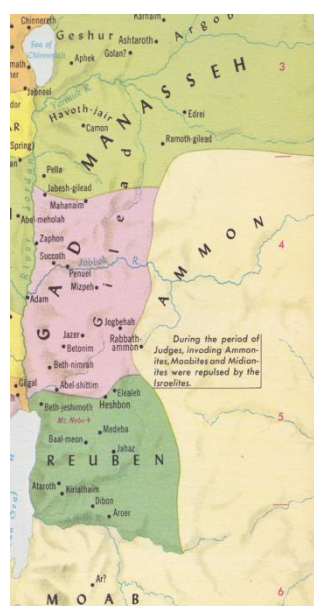
Moab was not a descendant of Abraham being a son of Abraham's nephew Lot, yet God in His generosity gives an allocation to the descendants of the sons of Lot within the greater inheritance of Abraham's descendants. Moab's inheritance was centred in Ar, the land south of the Arnon River to the east of the Dead Sea.

Once Israel reached the Arnon River (northern boundary of Moab) they would begin to dispossess the Amorites of King Sihon's territory.



Following that victory of the Amorites Moses would lead them to victory over King Og of Bashan which is today's Golan Heights. The lands immediately to the east of the Jordan River and the Sea of Gallilee were part of Israel's inheritance (Half of Manasseh, Gad and Reuben).

Ammon's Inheritance



After discussing the inheritance of Moab God went on to talk about the inheritance He gave to the descendants of Lot's other son, Ammon:

"And when you come near, across from the sons of Ammon, do not trouble them nor be stirred up against them. **For I will not give you any possessions from the land of the sons of Ammon, because I have given it to the sons of Lot for a possession**" (Deuteronomy 2:19).

In the next chapter God also told them: "And to the Reubenites and to the Gadites I gave from Gilead even to the river Arnon, half the valley, and the border even to the river Jabbok, the border of the sons of Ammon" (Deuteronomy 3:16).



The Jabbok River splits off from the Jordan River half way between the Sea of Gallilee and the Dead Sea. It runs east to west. The land south of the Jabbok River was divided between the Israelites and the Ammonites with the western part belonging to the Israelites and the eastern part belonging to Ammon.

Rabbath-Ammon is today the capital of Jordan, Amman. Today's Jordanians are not all of Arab descent with many descending from Moab and Ammon who had fair, not brown skin .

The Inheritance of Abraham's Sons with Keturah

Most people know that Abraham was married to Sarah but most people are unaware that Abraham had another wife after Sarah died by the name of Keturah. Abraham only had a son each through Sarah and Sarah's handmaid, Hagar. After marrying Keturah when he was well over 100 years old he, unbelievably, had another 6 sons.

In **Genesis 25:1-4** we read: "Then again Abraham took a wife, and her name was Keturah. And she bore him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and **Midian**, and Ishbak, and Shuah. And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were Asshurim and Letushim and Leummim. And the sons of Midian: Ephah and Ephraim and Hanoch and Abida and Eldaah. All these were the sons of Keturah."

Where is the inheritance of the descendants of Abraham through his second wife, Keturah. Most of the names of Keturah's sons are unfamiliar with the exception of Midian.



Midian was the land where Moses fled from the pharaoh of Egypt after he killed an Egyptian (Exodus 2:15). Jethro, his father-in-law, was a priest of Midian (Exodus 3:1). Horeb or Mount Sinai was also in the land of Midian (Exodus 3:1) which the Apostle Paul plainly states was in Arabia (Galatians 4:25).

Moses spent 40 years in the land of Midian. His wife and father-in-law were descended from Abraham's second wife, Keturah, through their son, Midian.

All ancient maps that show Midian on them show Midian as being the land to the east of the Sinai Peninsula in north-west Arabia. This general area to the south of Edom in NW Arabia appears to be the likely Middle East inheritance of the descendants of Keturah.

Another of Abraham and Keturah's sons, Medan, was the ancestor of the Medes, one half of the peoples who formed the Medo-Persian empire. These same people would migrate to northern India and become the Aryan people of that area including the people known as Brahmans, a name derived from Abraham.

Ishmael's Inheritance

The Arabs descend from Ishmael, the son of Abraham through Sarah's handmaid, Hagar who was a Mizraimite (Egyptian). Ishmael was half Mizraimite through Hagar and later married a Mizraimite.

God told Abraham that the birthright promises would not go to Ishmael but instead would be passed on through a son that would come from Abraham's wife, Sarah (**Genesis 17:15-21**).

What would have happened if Sarah and Abraham had simply waited for God to provide the solution and not taken matters into their own hands? Perhaps generations of strife could have been avoided. The geopolitical scene in the Middle East today might be very different, with the ever-present threat of war much diminished.

In **Genesis 17:20** God told Abraham: "And as for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly. He shall father twelve chiefs, and I will make him **a great nation.**"

God promised that Ishmael would not go without any blessing. God promised that from him would come a great nation, a promise repeated in **Genesis 21:18**.

This promise was fulfilled a few centuries after the fall of the Roman Empire. In the hundred years that followed the death of Mohammed in 632 AD the Arabs, with their new religion of Islam, conquered all of North Africa, Spain, the Middle East, Arabia, Persia, Armenia, Afghanistan and a third of India - an empire greater in size than that of the Roman Empire.

If Ishmael becoming a great nation meant an empire larger in area than the Roman Empire then how much greater are the birthright promises that God promised would come through Isaac's descendants?

In **Genesis 16:12** God says the following about Ishmael: "And he will be a wild man; his hand *will be* against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren."

Ishmael's inheritance would be close to those of his brethren (Jacob's descendants). The borders of Ishmael's territory aren't specifically designated in the Bible but we can probably safely assume based on their migrations that the remainder of the territory promised to Abraham's descendants would be the inheritance of Ishmael apart from those we have looked at (Edom, Moab, Ammon, Keturah's descendants) and the promised land of Israel that we'll look at shortly.

All the territory east of those other inheritances including all of the Arabian peninsula up to the River Euphrates would be the inheritance of Ishmael.

Israel's Land Inheritance

Abraham's grandson Jacob had 12 sons and from those sons descended the 12 tribes of Israel (**Genesis 35:22-26**). The Jews descend from Judah, one of the sons of Jacob. Only ONE of those 12 tribes are the Jewish people or the Jews as they are called (**Genesis 49:9-10**).

When it came to Jacob's descendants who would later go into captivity in Egypt, there would be a possession clause as to when God would give them the land mentioned in **Genesis 15:16**: "But in the fourth generation they shall come here again: for the iniquity of the Amorites *is* not yet full."

God wasn't prepared to dispossess the "squatters" until their iniquity was full plus Israel needed to grow enough to fill the land.

After their Exodus from Egypt and their subsequent 40 years of wilderness wanderings God decreed that it was then time for Israel to dispossess the Canaanite tribes who did not own the land in God's eyes but were merely squatters or short term leasees.

After the conquest of the Amorites the kingdom of Sihon was appealing to the tribes of Gad and Reuben because it was good country for cattle raising which they had in abundance.

Gad inherited the northern half of the Amorites' former territory in between the Jordan River and the territory of Ammon. Reuben inherited the southern half which was along the NE side of the Dead Sea to the north of the territory of Moab.

The half-tribe of Manasseh, which shared Joseph's double-portion of the birthright, would also inherit territory on the eastern side of the Jordan River.

Manasseh would inherit the territory that formerly was the kingdom of Og of Bashan after his people were defeated by Moses and the Israelites. This area is today's Golan Heights.

Manasseh's eastern inheritance would extend from the Golan Heights all the way down to the fertile plains of Gilead SE of the Sea of Galilee down to the Jabbok River which formed the border of the inheritance of Gad.

Manasseh's inheritance on the western side of the Jordan was also quite considerable. It included the northern part of the central highlands from the Plain of Jezreel to just south of Shechem.



Shechem was where the Israelites reconfirmed their covenant with God after the 7 years of conquest in Joshua's time which sat between Mt Gerizim and Mt Ebal. The later capital of Samaria was also within Manasseh's territory. Manasseh's western inheritance extended from the Jordan River to the Plain of Sharon on the Mediterranean coast.

The other half-tribe of Joseph, Ephraim, had an inheritance to the south of Manasseh that included the central part of the central highlands. Shiloh, where the tabernacle was in the time of the Judges, was within Ephraim's territory. Benjamin had a smaller inheritance to the south of Ephraim's territory. Jericho and Bethel were on it's northern border with Ephraim.

Today's Palestinian West Bank territory, according to God, belongs to the tribes of Manasseh, Ephraim and Benjamin.

Jebus, which later became Jerusalem, was in the very south of Benjamin's territory, close to the border with Judah's inheritance.

Judah's inheritance included all the land south of Dan and Benjamin's inheritances including today's Gaza strip which is north of the Wadi El-Arish, the southern border of Judah.

West of Benjamin's territory was the inheritance of Dan that extended to the coast. Samson was from the tribe of Dan and lived in the Shephalah or foothills between the coast and the central highlands. Some of the tribe of Dan weren't happy with their inheritance and migrated up to the north of Israel at the foothills of Mount Hermon where Tell Dan is today.

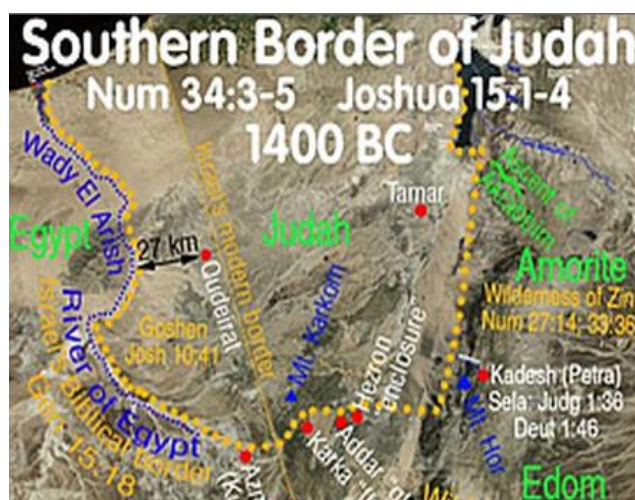
The fertile Jezreel plain was shared between the tribes of Asher, Zebulun, Issachar, Naphtali and Manasseh. Asher's inheritance was on the northern coast at the coastal end of the Mt Carmel range.

Nazareth was within the inheritance of Zebulun and Mt Tabor and Beth Shan were within the inheritance of Issachar. The land on the western side of the Sea of Galilee and west of the Jordan River was a part of Naphtali. Capernaum, where Jesus was based during His ministry, was in the land of Naphtali.

Just how far north, south, east and west was the land promised to the descendants of Israel by God that did not go to the other descendants of Abraham? The borders of what God promised specifically to the descendants of Israel's twelve sons is outlined for us in **Numbers 34**.

"The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, 'Command the people of Israel, and say to them, When you enter the land of Canaan (this is the land that shall fall to you for an inheritance, the land of Canaan as defined by its borders), your south side shall be from the wilderness of Zin alongside Edom, and your southern border shall run from the end of the Salt Sea on the east.

"And your border shall turn south of the ascent of Akrabbim, and cross to Zin, and its limit shall be south of Kadesh-barnea. Then it shall go on to Hazar-addar, and pass along to Azmon. And the border shall turn from Azmon to the Brook of Egypt, and its limit shall be at the sea. (**Numbers 34:1-5**).



Above is a map showing the southern border of Judah. Kadesh Barnea, at the centre of wilderness wanderings of the Israelites, is usually located at Ein el Qudeirat in the middle of the Negev. This conflicts with where the Bible places Kadesh-Barnea.

Kadesh-Barnea was on the edge of the territory of Edom. Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom: "Behold, we are at Kadesh, a town on the edge of your territory" (Numbers 20:16). Edom's territory only extended as west as the Arabah valley at this time, the valley that goes south from the Dead Sea to the Red Sea. They only expanded west of this after the Jews went to Babylon. This places Kadesh-Barnea along the Arabah valley.

Deuteronomy 1:2 confirms this when it says that "There are 11 days journey from Horeb by the way of mount Seir unto Kadesh-Barnea." If Kadesh-Barnea was at Ein el Qudeirat you would not take the way of mount Seir (the road up the Arabah valley up past Petra) you would take the north-western road away from the Arabah valley after reaching Ezion-Geber.

The River or Brook of Egypt is often mistakenly thought of us as the Nile River but the Nile River does not fit with this description of the southern border of Israel. The River or Brook of Egypt is the Wadi El Arish.

This southern border that God gives to the descendants of Israel does not go all the way down to Gulf of Aqaba as Israel's border does today where Elat is. Near Elat was Solomon's naval base of Ezion-Geber. He had an alliance with Egypt who, in God's eyes, owns the land where Ezion-Geber was.

Most of the Sinai Peninsula belongs to Egypt (Mizraim). All the land west of the Arabah valley to the south of Israel's border belongs to Egypt.

Edom's territory does not go all the way down to the Gulf of Aqaba. South of Edom's territory was the land of Midian and east of the territories of Edom, Moab and Midian was the inheritance of Ishmael in Arabia.

Continuing on in **Numbers 34** we read:

"For the western border, you shall have the Great Sea and its coast. This shall be your western border.

"This shall be your northern border: from the Great Sea you shall draw a line to Mount Hor. From Mount Hor you shall draw a line to Lebo-**hamath**, and the limit of the border shall be at Zedad. Then the border shall extend to Ziphron, and its limit shall be at Hazar-enan. This shall be your northern border.

"You shall draw a line for your eastern border from Hazar-enan to Shepham. And the border shall go down from Shepham to **Riblah** on the east side of Ain. And the border shall go down and reach to the shoulder of the Sea of Chinnereth (Sea of Gallilee) on the east. And the border shall go down to the Jordan, and its limit shall be at the Salt Sea (Dead Sea). This shall be your land as defined by its borders all around.

"Moses commanded the people of Israel, saying, 'This is the land that you shall inherit by lot, which the LORD has commanded to give to the nine tribes and to the half-tribe...The two tribes (Reuben and Gad) and the half-tribe (Manasseh) have received their inheritance beyond the Jordan east of Jericho, toward the sunrise'" (**Numbers 34:7-15**).

The northern border is very hard to pin down because of the uncertain locations of the places named in the passage.

The places along the border are Mount Hor, Lebo-Hamath, Zedad, Ziphron and Hazar-enan.

In Joshua 13 more information is given about this northern area that was part of Israel's inheritance:

"Now Joshua was old and advanced in years, and the LORD said to him, 'You are old and advanced in years, and there remains yet very much land to possess...**all Lebanon**, toward the sunrise, from Baal-gad below Mount Hermon to Lebo-hamath, all the inhabitants of the hill country from Lebanon to Misrephoth-maim, **even all the Sidonians**'" (**Joshua 13:1-6**).

Mount Hor appears to be a different Mount Hor than the one in the territory of Edom. Some think it may be Mount Hermon though it is likely to be a mountain much further north.

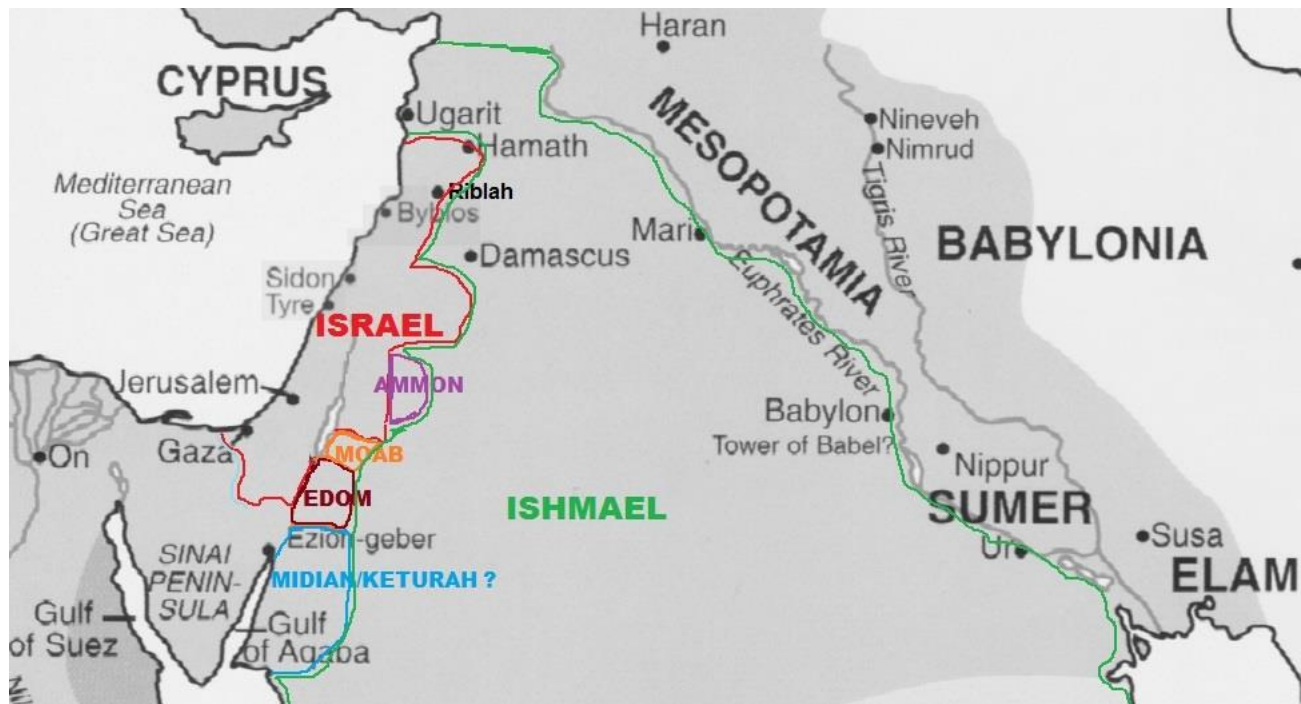
All of Lebanon including Sidon was to be a part of Israel's inheritance so Israel's northern border extended at least as far north as Sidon. This would include the city of Tyre which became an economic powerhouse under the Phoenecians.

Lebo-Hamath is mentioned as part of the northern border. Hamath, on the Orontes River, was well known and is known today as Hama.

Damascus is roughly the same latitude as Sidon but about 100 kilometres inland. Baalbek is NW of Damascus in the middle of the valley between the Lebanon mountains and the Anti-Lebanon mountains. Mount Hermon is at the southern end of the Anti-Lebanon mountains. Further north of Baalbek is Riblah which is noted as part of the eastern border of Israel.

It appears as if the northern border of the inheritance of Israel probably stretches from the Mediterranean coast midway between Byblos and Ugarit (Ras Sharma) across to Hamath (Hama) and a little further east and then turns south to incorporate all the mountains of the Anti-Lebanon mountains.

Just south of Damascus east of the Anti-Lebanon mountains the eastern border then goes eastward again to incorporate the territory of Manasseh's eastern inheritance which was formerly the territory of Og of Bashan which is today's Golan Heights.



It is interesting to note what is not included in Israel's inheritance given the misconception that many have that Israel's inheritance went all the way from the Euphrates to the Nile.

While it appears to include a small portion of SW Syria just above Lebanon it likely does not appear to include Damascus or northern Syria up to the Euphrates even though a narrow stretch of the kingdom of Solomon did extend to the Euphrates to include Tadmor or today's Palmyra.

The Expositor's Bible in its commentary on Joshua 13 says the following:

"Another important section of the country unsubdued was the Phoenician territory - the land of the Sidonians (Joshua 13:4, Joshua 13:6). Also the hilly country across Lebanon, embracing the valley of Coele-Syria, and apparently the region of Mount Carmel ("from Lebanon unto Misrephothmaim," Joshua 13:6, and compare Joshua 11:8).

No doubt much of this district was recovered in the time of the Judges, and still more in the time of David; but David made peace with the King of Tyre, who still retained the rocky strip of territory that was so useful to a commercial nation, but would have been almost useless to an agricultural people like the Israelites."

God placed His chosen people Israel in a central location between the continents of Africa, Asia and Europe along major trade routes between them to be a model nation to the world.

We have to now ask the question “Who does God say owns the land of Syria?” now that we know that it was not decreed to the people of Israel.

The ancient Syrians were also known as the Arameans because a large portion of them anciently descended from Aram. They are closely related to the Israelites. Aram was one of the sons of Shem.

Abraham was a descendant of another of Shem’s sons, Arphaxad. Abraham and his family came from Padan-Aram. The original land of the descendants of Aram was just on the other side of the Euphrates near Haran and Carchemish.

Racially the descendants of Aram are a white, Caucasian people. Even today Syria’s tyrannical president, Assad, is clearly of Caucasian appearance. Armenians, who descend from Aram, form a minority of Syria’s population today with the majority of Syria’s population made up of darker-skinned Arabs.

Aram was not of the line of Abraham so it is likely that the true Arameans do not have an inheritance on Israel’s side of the Euphrates but more than likely their inheritance is on the Turkish side of the Euphrates where many other Armenians and Kurds live today. Syria likely belongs to the Arabs who descend from Abraham’s son, Ishmael.

The Migrations of the Peoples of the World

We’ve looked at how the Levant and Arabian peninsula was deeded to the descendants of Abraham including both Israel and the Arabs let’s now look at the other areas of the world.

In **Deuteronomy 32:8** we read: “When the most High **divided to the nations their inheritance**, when he separated the sons of Adam, **he set the bounds of the people** according to the number of the children of Israel.”

In **Acts 17:26** we also read: “And He has made all nations of men of one blood to dwell on all the face of the earth, **ordaining fore-appointed seasons and boundaries of their dwelling.**”

God sets the boundaries of the peoples and divided to the nations their inheritance. National peoples have been ordained pre-appointed seasons and also boundaries of dwelling. The seasons could possibly mean times of national greatness as many different nations have had their season of greatness or empire. This ordaining of the boundaries of their dwelling strongly implies that God’s guiding hand is involved in where each major group of people have ended up on this earth.

God has done this but how can we tell what the boundaries are of the national inheritances that He has granted or titled to them?

The Bible does not give us any specifics as to the lands that He has deeded to other nations. The implication of **Acts 17:26** is that the areas which the different peoples migrated is in the most general of terms the likely areas that God has had in mind for these different people.

Many lands have been fought over and gone back and forth between different peoples but we get a **very rough idea** of their inheritances from the locations where these different peoples have ended up in our 21st century.

In relation to **Deuteronomy 32:8** and **Acts 17:26** Herman Hoeh wrote the following in his article “The Race Question” (Plain Truth, April 1957):

The very color of the skin makes it more tolerable for a Negro to withstand tropical climate. Whites were not meant to populate Central Africa. South Africa, however, does provide the type of climate suitable for Europeans...

Take the example of the Mongolians. Only in East Asia does the climate constantly vary from extremely hot to extremely cold. No other portion of the earth's surface presents such a variation in weather. The Oriental was made exactly for that climate. His blood vessels are not so near the surface of the skin as among Whites. Hence the color of his skin. Mongolians do not therefore notice the extremes in climate.

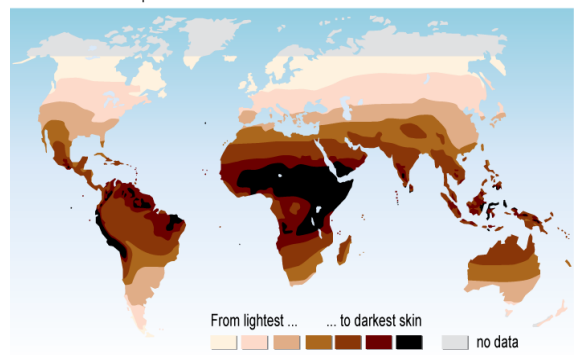
Next, take the example of the Germans. They are an energetic people. They form the very heart of Europe. That is why God led them there - so that the whole of Europe could be efficiently and thoroughly integrated in its economy. Similar parallels may be drawn with all peoples, races and nationalities...Each of the primary races [white, black/brown and yellow] is separated by bodies of water, deserts or great mountain barriers (p.19, 22).

We see some general principles in how national peoples have been guided by God to the places that God has given to them as an inheritance.

One fairly clear principle is that the darker skinned peoples have been guided to the areas of the earth closer to the equator than the white peoples.

People with darker brown and black skin have the skin pigment to withstand tropical weather far better than light skinned people who are far more at risk of skin cancer when living close to the equator.

Skin colour map for indigenous people
Predicted from multiple environmental factors



Source: Chaplin G.®, Geographic Distribution of Environmental Factors Influencing Human Skin Coloration, American Journal of Physical Anthropology 125:292-302, 2004; map updated in 2007.

This is evident with the Oriental peoples of Eastern Asia who vary in skin colour with the darker skinned peoples closer to the equator and progressively lighter skinned as you move further away from the equator.

Indonesians, Malaysians and Philipinos have darker skin than other East Asian people such as the Chinese. The Japanese and Koreans have even lighter skin that matches the skin colour of Caucasian people.

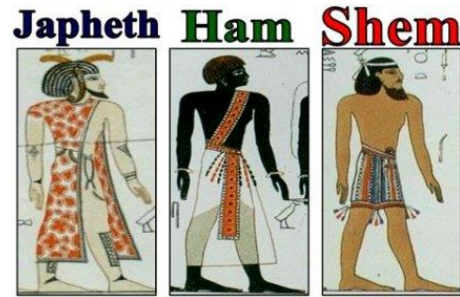
The white peoples are found in the cool to temperate areas such as Europe, North America (above Mexico) and places like Argentina, Australia and South Africa. The brown and black peoples are found closer to the equator in Latin America, North and Central Africa, India, SE Asia and the Pacific Islands.

I would like to quote most of a large article by Herman Hoeh published in the 1957 Plain Truth magazine entitled "The Truth About The Race Question!" which gives an overview of the research that he did on the question of which nations descended from who in **Genesis 10**:

The Mysterious Table of Nations

Let us first turn to **Genesis 10** and **1 Chronicles 1**. Here is the place to start...All human beings alive today sprang from the family of Noah. Listen! God "blotted out every living substance which was upon the face of the ground, both man, and cattle, and creeping thing, and fowl of the heaven ... and Noah only was left, and they that were with him in the ark" (**Genesis 7:23**).

'The whole human family sprang from the three sons of Noah...All nations and races sprang from Japheth, Ham and Shem, the three sons of Noah. From the three sons sprang 16 grandsons of Noah.



These 16 family names illustrate all the general types of people extant today. All these sons had children, but their names are not recorded in Scripture. We did not need to know their names in order to understand the Bible.

The nearer the family settled to Palestine the greater are the number of children and grandchildren listed. In the family of Arphaxad the children are listed for nearly 70 generations up to Jesus Christ! But for the purpose of prophecy we need usually go no further than the grandchildren of Noah's sons. Most of these names in Genesis 10 and 1 Chronicles 1 are simple to trace. Some are more difficult. Let us now begin the most thrilling story of adventure ever written, yet a story with real meaning for today!

Not All Hebrews Are Jews!

Notice Arphaxad first. He is a son of Shem. He is mentioned in **Genesis 10:22** and **1 Chronicles 1:24**. Arphaxad had a grandson named Eber. The name Eber means a "migrant," one who comes from the 'region beyond.' The sons of Eber are properly known as "Hebrews"---and there are about 400 million of them on earth today! Yet almost no one really knows who the sons of Eber---the Hebrews---are at this time!

Eber had two sons reckoned to him. It was in their day, about 100 years after the flood, that God "divided the earth" as an inheritance for the different family groups (**Genesis 10:25** and **Deuteronomy 32:8**). From Peleg, one of these two sons, came Abraham. God promised Abraham that his descendants would be as numerous as the dust of the ground. The Jews are certainly not as numerous as the dust. Only a tiny fraction of Abraham's descendants are known as Jews today! Where are the others?

Abraham's firstborn son was Ishmael (**Genesis 16:15**). His descendants are called Arabs today. They still remember that they are descended from Abram's son Ishmael. Ask any Arab. He'll tell you so! Whenever you see the name "Ishmael," or any name of Ishmael's sons (**Genesis 25:12-18**), you will know that the prophecy is referring to the Arabs today. The Arabs have spread from Arabia throughout North Africa and eastward into the Far East. There is trouble in the Near East between Jordan and the Jews. Here is why.

Kingdom of Jordan in Prophecy

Abraham also had a nephew named Lot. Lot had two sons, Moab and Ammon. They were born to him after the calamity that hit Sodom (**Genesis 19:37-38**). They lived by the Arabs east of the Dead Sea next to Palestine. They are still in the same region today! Their nation today is called Jordan, after the Jordan River. Jordan has been much in the news lately, Amman is the capital of Jordan now.

Isaiah 11:14 points out that these two sons of Lot live near Palestine today. Since the days of Isaiah, the children of Moab have been "very small and without strength" (**Isaiah 16:13-14**). They have not been taken "into captivity" to another nation (**Jeremiah 48:11**). In these latter days boastful Moab lives "together with the children of Ammon" (**Ezekiel 25:9-10**). The Kingdom of Jordan occupies part of present-day Palestine and keeps the Jews from dwelling in Old Jerusalem. **Jeremiah 49:1-2** prophesied this over 2500 years ago! But Arabs and Jordanians are not the only Hebrews!

Turkey In Prophecy

Abraham had another son, Isaac. Isaac had two sons, twins, named Esau and Jacob. Jacob was the younger and the stronger. These two brothers gave rise to two different nationalities.

"And the Lord said unto Rebeka: 'Two nations are in thy womb, and two peoples shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other; and the elder shall serve the younger.' And when her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, there were twins in her womb. And the first came forth ruddy, all over like a hairy mantle" (**Genesis 25:23-25**).

Esau, the elder, was not properly developed. The lanugo or hair that covers a foetus through the sixth, seventh and eighth months failed to drop off Esau as it does with all normal children. Esau was weaker, not fully developed. His children, of course, did NOT inherit this peculiar characteristic. Esau did not give rise to a different race, but to a different nationality. Esau's children are white, as history proves. Esau's descendants play a vital part in world affairs today! Where are his descendants?

Notice some of the sons of Esau: Teman, Omar, Amalek (**Genesis 25:11**). These are not Jewish names! Yet some claim that the Jews are the children of Esau. Nothing could be further from the truth---as we shall presently see. Esau, or Edom, as he is also called, lived southeast of Palestine near Petra. Arab Bedouins live there now. Then where have Esau's children gone?

From the days of Nebuchadnezzar, who carried them captive, they disappear for 1000 years from history. Then suddenly we find Amalek the name of a city in Turkestan in Central Asia (from Paul Herrmann's *SIEBEN VORBEI UND ACHT VERWEHT*, p.451). The Egyptians used to call the Amalekites Amu. In Turkestan is the River Amu today! In Bible times the Edomites inhabited Mt. Seir (**Genesis 32:4**). In Turkestan is the Syr Darya---the River of Syr or Seir. The leading Turkish tribe is the Ottoman.

The prophecies referring to Edom or Esau mention Teman as the leading tribe in these latter days (**Obadiah 9**). The conclusion is inescapable. The Ottoman Turks are the sons of Teman. Merely the vowels in spelling have been changed over these past millenniums. From Central Asia the Turks or Edomites moved into Asia Minor. That is where Esau's children live today! Turkey controls the "crossway" of the nations---the Dardanelles (**Obadiah 14**). How clear, ESAU OR EDOM IS TURKEY today!...

Abraham's Other Sons

But to return to the story of Abraham, Abraham had a concubine, Keturah, who was his wife after Sarah died. She bore him a number of children whose wanderings are often lost sight of. They are enumerated in **Genesis 25:1-6**. Abraham sent them northeast toward Mesopotamia. There they formed the powerful Kingdom of Mitanni, named after Midian or Medan. They lived mainly along the Euphrates River. The Assyrians destroyed their kingdom, sending some east and others north. In the east, evidence is that they became known as the Persians...and, in India, as the Brahmins ---the sons of Abram!...

The Hebrews called the Euphrates the Perath or Peres River---the River of the Persians! The Persians named several small rivers in their new land after the Euphrates in Mesopotamia. Cyrus the King, so famous in Bible history, was a Persian. "Travellers still speak of the fair-complexioned, blue eyed populations met with in the Persian highlands", writes Sayce in *RACES OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*. "Chestnut hair is very common in Persia, as it is among the West European Alpines", says Griffith Taylor in *ENVIRONMENT AND RACE*, p.186.

The Persians are distinct from Arabs. Many Persians are leading businessmen in the Middle East. They are among the wealthiest class in India, where they are called "Parsees". Many non-Persians of Arabic and Negroid stock, however, live in Persia today.

In India one branch of Keturah's children form the highest caste and call themselves Brahmins after their father's original name, Abram.

Among the sons of Keturah who later went north were the "Letushim" (**Genesis 25:3**). And where are the Letushim today? Along the shores of the Baltic Sea in Russia. We call them the "Lettish" people today. Many Letts have fled to this country from Russian oppression. The Letts

are closely related to the other peoples living along the southeastern shores of the Baltic Sea. Here, then, is where a number of Keturah's sons are found...

Germany In Prophecy!

The children of Abraham called Asshurim received that name as a result of migrating to the land of Assyria or Asshur. We shall know where the Asshurim are if we first locate the modern day descendants of Assyria or Asshur.

Asshur means "strong" or "powerful". Asshur was a brother of Arphaxad (**Genesis 10:22**). The Assyrians---who came from Asshur---settled along the Tigris River around the city of Nineveh (**Genesis 10:11**). None of the sons of Asshur are mentioned in the Bible, but history gives us several of their names. Some of the sons of Asshur are these: Kharmen, or Germanni---meaning men of war; Khatti; Akkadians; Almani, or Halmani; and Kassites, or Cossaei. (For these names see any article on "Assyria", or these separate names, in Biblical encyclopaedias).

Where are these tribes today? They are no longer in ancient Assyria! Where did they go? The entire tenth chapter of Isaiah pictures the power that Asshur---the Assyrians---shall wield in these latter days. But where shall we look for them? First of all the Assyrians were driven from their land shortly after their fall in 610 B.C.

Pliny, the Roman historian of the time of Christ, says the "Assyrians were north of the Crimea in Russia (NATURAL HISTORY, book IV, sec. xii). About 300 years later Jerome writes that "Asshur is also joined with the tribes invading Western Europe ALONG THE RHINE" (Letter CXXIII, sec.16, from NICENE AND POST-NICENE FATHERS).

So the Assyrians migrated to Central Europe! Notice the tribes coming into Central Europe---into Germany and Austria: the Khatti (the ancient name for Hessians---see ENCY.BRIT., article "Germany"); the Quadians (Latin for the Akkadians); the Germanni from which the word German" comes today; the Chauca (the Cossaei of ancient Assyria); and the Allemani (the Latin name for the ancient Alman tribe of Assyria). CERTAINLY HERE ARE THE TRIBES OF ASSYRIA! Germany is Assyria in prophecy!

The North Germans, basically, are therefore the sons of Asshurim of Keturah. The remainder of the Germans and Austrians are the descendants of the ancient Assyrians or Asshur.

The ancient Assyrians deified their ancestor Asshur. In the Indo-Germanic language the name Asshur was spelled Athur (ENCY.BRIT.,art. "Mesopotamia", sec. Persians). And when the Assyrians are next found in Central Europe they are still worshipping Athur as Thur or Thor! And we still commemorate Asshur by the name Thursday---Asshur's day! The name Asshur or Athur is still preserved among the Thuringian Germans.

The Latins In Prophecy

Now that we have located the German, where are the Greeks, South Italians, Spaniards and Portuguese mentioned in prophecy? Turn to **Genesis 10:2, 4**. Here is the answer. You find Javan, a son of Japheth, listed. Javan had four sons, Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim and Dodanim. In **1 Chronicles 1:7** the last name is spelled Rodanim. The Bible itself proves how often names were changing in ancient times.

Where are the sons of Javan today? The Bible makes the answer very plain. No need to look for any evidence outside of the Bible this time. Look in either STRONG's or YOUNG's CONCORDANCE. There you will find that in the Old Testament, wherever the words "Greece" or "Grecia" are used in English, the word "Javan" is used in Hebrew!

Javan is the father of the Greeks, and of the other Latins. His son Elishah spread into "Hellas" --the Greek Isles in the Aegaeen Sea and to Cyprus, anciently called "Alisha". His son Dodanim or Rodanim spread through the Dodecanes, and the Isle of Rhodes and parts of the French Mediterranean coast along the Rhone. From here they migrated eastward again and were known as the "Galatians" in Bible times.

Tarshish first settled in Asia Minor. The city of Tarsus was named after him. Here the apostle Paul was born. From Tarsus the tribe spread into Spain and northern Portugal, founding the famous port of Tartessus---the Tarshish of the Old Testament history of Solomon's time (**2 Chronicles 9:21**).

The descendants of Kittim first settled on the island of Cyprus and then migrated into Southern Italy. This is simply proved by checking the historical fulfillment of **Daniel 11:30**. The "ships of Kittim" were Roman fleets sailing from Cyprus.

In modern times many Spanish and Portuguese people (as well as Italians and a few Greeks) have migrated to the New World. These are the lands of Javan today.

The Iron Curtain Countries

Where are such countries as Poland, Czechoslovakia, Romania, and Yugoslavia mentioned in Bible prophecy? Could the Bible neglect these vitally important nations which are the center of struggle between East and West in Europe?

Assuredly not---nor are they neglected! These people of Eastern Europe are usually called "Slavs", a word derived from "slaves". (Many of these people were once sold as slaves into Western Europe by the Germans.) But what were their true original names ?

The Germans often called them "Wends". The Latins called them "Eneti" or "Veneti". Other tribes among them were called "Pol", and "Elimaei", or "Elymaei", and "Kashub". (See SMITH's GREEK AND ROMAN CLASSICAL DICTIONARY)

Where, in ancient Bible lands, were these tribes located? In the land of Elam! Elam was a son of Shem (**Genesis 10:22**). Elam settled east of the ancient city of Babylon. Daniel the prophet spent some time in Elam (**Daniel 8:2**). The Elamites named the most famous mountain in their land Elwend (Rawlinson's SEVEN GREAT MONARCHIES, chapt. 1. Media). No wonder the Elamites were called the "Wends" in Europe.

Elam early invaded the Palestinian Coast of the Mediterranean (**Genesis 14:1**). There they named a river Elwend---the Greeks called it the Orontes. Some of them migrated into Asia Minor where they were named the people of Pul (**Isaiah 66:19**). From the word "Pul" comes Poland---the land of Pol or Pul! From Asia Minor they migrated into South Russia, then into Eastern Europe. Another tribe in ancient Elam was called KASHU (ENCYCLOPAEDIA BIBLICA, map. p.4845) In Poland we find the Kashub living today! (ENCY.BRIT., "Kashubes.") The Greeks in ancient times said that the Elimaei dwelled northwest of them---in what is Southern Yugoslavia today (SMITH's CLASS.DICT., "Elimea"). The word Elimaei was also used by the Greeks to refer to the ancient land of "Elam" near Babylon.

The Latins called the Elamites or Wends "Eneti". Strabo, the Roman geographer wrote about the migration "of Enetians from Paphlagonia in Asia Minor TO THE ADRIATIC"---modern Yugoslavia! (GEOGRAPHY OF STRABO, p.227). Surely there is no mistaking where Elam is today.

In Bible times Elam was divided between East and West, that is, between Media and Babylon. The same is true today! The Elamites are divided between East and West,---between Western Europe and the Russian Iron Curtain. Some of these Iron Curtain countries will ... ultimately attack the coming United States of Europe---modern "Babylon" (**Isaiah 21:2**). Now let us discover who the Russians are.

Russia In Prophecy

Russia is mentioned almost by name in some versions of the Bible! Turn to **Ezekiel 38:2**. Here you will find that a certain power called "Gog" is "the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal". The proper translation is "the prince of Rosh. Meshech and Tubal!" In Hebrew, the word for chief is "Rosh". That is also the ancient name for "Russia".

Over half of all Russia is occupied by a people called "Great Russians" today. The Great Russians are divided into two distinctive people who have remained constantly together since the beginning of history. We shall now prove from history that the Great Russians are the descendants of Meshech and Tubal (**Genesis 10:2**).

Here is what the *ENCYCLOPAEDIA BRITANNICA* says about the Great Russians: "Notwithstanding the unity of language, it is easy to detect among the Great Russians themselves two separate branches differing from one another by slight divergencies of language and type and DEEP DIVERSITIES OF NATIONAL CHARACTER . . . (article "Russia"). One branch settled around Moscow. The word Moscow is but an English spelling of the Russian "Moskva", a word almost identical to the one used by the Assyrians to refer to the the people of Meshech! The other branch constitutes the people of Tubal. This branch of the Great Russians founded the city of Tobolsk in Siberia and named the Tobol River.

Professor Sayce says of these people: "in the Assyrian inscriptions the names appear as Tubla' and Muska', and they were known to classical geographers (Greeks) as Tiberani and Moskhi". He continues by saying that, after the days of Nebuchadnezzar, the Greeks found Meshech and Tubal "farther to the north than they had been in the age of the Assyrian monuments . . . they were forced to retreat northward towards the Black Sea, and it was in this region of Asia Minor that Xenophon and his Greek troupes found their scanty remains" (*RACES OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, p.48). Meshech and Tubal migrated into Russia! Surely there is no mistaking who Meshech and Tubal are today.

Russia is north of Palestine. **Ezekiel 38:2** points out that they come from the north ---where Russia is today! But here is even more proof that it is Russia mentioned in **Ezekiel 38:2**. Do you know where the word "Siberia" comes from? In Asia Minor, where the people of Tubal first settled, a vast tract of land was called Subaria, sometimes spelled less correctly "Subartu". This word has puzzled historians no end! Here is the origin of "Siberia!" The same word was used to refer to a part of ancient Elam, and today we have the Serbians in Yugoslavia --- part of the land of Elam today! (*ENCY.BRIT.*, art., "Mesopotamia.")

Origin of Word "Russia"

What is the origin of the word "Russian"---the "Rosh" of **Ezekiel 38:2** (when properly translated)? The *INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BIBLE ENCYCLOPAEDIA* gives the answer. Here, under the article "Rosh", we find that a vast area of the Mesopotamian Valley was called "the land of Roshu!" The word "Russ" or "Rosh" means blonde. And in ancient Mesopotamia lived the blonde children of Keturah and Abraham mentioned in **Genesis 25:1-6**. They founded the Kingdom of Mitanni, named after Midian and Medan.

In modern times the name "Russ" was first applied to Russia because of the blond people of White Russia who live next to the people of Meshech and Tubal. (See *ENCY.BRIT.*, art. "Russia".) These blonds are quite different from the Great Russians. The White Russians [today's Belarus] are related to the Asshurim of North Germany and to the Letushim and other Abrahamic tribes along the Baltic. They are the main body of the people of Medan and Midian who proceeded north into Russia centuries ago! Herodotus mentions that the "Matienians" from the land of Rosh were associated with the people of Meshech and Tubal! (Thalia, 94.) And Pliny the Roman natural historian speaks of the "Matiani" as moving into Russia through the Caucasus (BK. VI, sec. xviii of *NATURAL HISTORY*). That is the true origin of the word "Russian".

And Little Russians, too!

Not all Russians are Great Russians and White Russians. Some are called "Little Russians". They live---in the Ukraine and the eastern parts of Romania and Poland. They are often called Ukrainians or Ruthenians. There are about 50 million of them! Who are these people? The MEDES! The sons of Madai! Here is the proof!

In **Genesis 10:2** we have Madai, the son of Japheth listed. Now check in an exhaustive concordance. You will find the original Hebrew word translated into English as "Mede" or "Median" is always Madai. Madai is the father of the Medes. The Medes used to be associated

with the Persians. You will read about them especially in the book of Daniel. But by the time of Nehemiah the Persians were much more prominent . Today there are no Medes left in Persia. The Medes are gone. Certainly a great branch of the human family could not suddenly vanish from the earth!

Indeed they did not. Throughout South Russia ---in the Ukraine---four centuries before Christ the Medes were beginning to settle. Here is what the historian Herodotus wrote of these people: "They say that they are a colony of the Medes. How they can have been a colony of the Medes I cannot comprehend; but anything may happen in course of time" (Terpsichore, 9).

Herodotus, like many moderns, was prone to believe that the people who inhabited Mesopotamia and the "Bible lands" must be living there today. But they are not. The Arabs have taken their place! The fact that the Medes are the Little Russians today is further amplified by Pliny in his NATURAL HISTORY, bk. VI, sec. xi. He mentions "the river Don, where the inhabitants are . . . said to be descended from the Medes"!

Media is pictured along with Elam in Eastern Europe as attacking Western Europe in World War III (**Isaiah 21:2**).

Who Are Gog and Magog in Prophecy?

Turn again to the prophecy of Ezekiel 38 and 39. Notice the identity of Gog and Magog. Who are the people called "Gog" and "Magog" ? Magog, rather than Gog, is mentioned in Genesis 10:2. Gog is apparently a tribal subdivision of Magog. In prophecy, Magog comes to great prominence in the West only in the latter days.

Here is what the JEWISH ENCYCLOPAEDIA says about Gog and Mogog: " . . .[a] wall [was] built by . . . (Alexander the Great) to shut them off from the rest of the world. . . . Geographically they represent the extreme northeast, and are placed on the borders of the sea that encircles the earth."

Notice what the unrivalled McCLINTOCK & STRONG ENCYCLOPAEDIA says about Gog and Magog: "According to Reinegge (DESCRIPT.OF THE CAUCASUS, ii, 79), some of the Caucasian people call their mountains Gog, and the highest northern points Magog" ---because the people of Magog once lived in these regions in Bible times! "The Arabians are of the opinion that the descendants of Gog and Magog inhabit the northern parts of Asia, beyond the Tartars and Slavonians [or Russians], and they put Yajuj and Majuj always in conjunction, thereby indicating the extreme points in north and north-east of Asia" (from art. "Gog"). Some writers spell these Arabic words Yagog and Magog.

Now to what people are these names referring? They dwell in the northern part of Asia, bordering on the ocean, and rise to prominence with the Russians of Europe "in the latter days" (**Ezekiel 38:8**). The Mongols and their Asiatic kinsmen! In fact, the proper spelling of "Mongol" is 'Mogol', obviously a slightly changed form of "Magog"! And in Asiatic Russia live the Yakuts---the Yagog of the Arab historians.

Mongolia today is in the Russian sphere of influence. The people of Mongolia, together with China, Manchuria, Korea and Japan, are all of this one great branch of mankind...

Gomer Not In Europe

Look in your Bible for a map---if you have one in your Bible. There you will probably have pictured the descendants of Gomer migrating into Europe! Nothing could be further from the truth. They migrated in exactly the opposite direction! But do you know why many have assumed that Gomer may be in modern Europe today? Because the people of Northwest Europe journeyed through the land of Gomer before coming to Europe and were therefore called Kymmeri! Prophecy says this very fact would occur ! Notice what Israel is called while in captivity: "Gomer" (**Hosea 1:3**). The woman "Gomer" mentioned by the prophet had the same name which the children of Israel bore when coming into Europe! The Israelites were called

Khumri or Cymri, or Khmeri, or Cimmerians upon reaching northwest Europe. But where are the descendants of Gomer today?

Gomer originally settled northeast of Elam. From here they were driven to the Caucasus, between the Black and the Caspian Sea. Then they journeyed to Southeast Asia! Notice! The native name for Cambodia in Indo-China is Khmer ---the land of Gomer! Read the BRITANNICA article on Cambodia. Associated with Gomer are the Chams and Annamese. Could this be only a coincidence?

The Cambodians are related to the Siamese, Burmese and other brown Mongoloids of the Indonesian Isles and the Philippines...One branch of the family of Gomer, however, did not journey to Southeast Asia. **Ezekiel 38:6** explains it: "The house of Togarmah in the uttermost parts of the north, and all his bands" (Jewish translation). The far, far north means Russian Siberia today! That is where the descendants of Togarmah (**Genesis 10:3**) live. These Asiatics are still a wild nomadic people, much as they were 2500 years ago, trading "with horses and horsemen and mules" (**Ezekiel 27:14**)...

The Middle East In Prophecy

Where is Syria mentioned in the Bible? Who are the Syrians? The Syrians are the descendants of Aram, a son of Shem. Everywhere in the Old Testament where the word "Syria" or "Syrian" appears in English, the word in Hebrew is Aram or Aramean. The Arameans were called Syrians by the Greeks because they once formed part of the Assyrian Empire dominated by Asshur, the Germanic people.

Now we are about to find an unusual characteristic of the children of Aram. Aram had four sons listed in **Genesis 10:23**: Uz, Hul, Gether and Mash. Compare this with **1 Chronicles 1:17**. Here the sons of Shem include "Aram, AND Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Meshech." First, notice that the sons of Aram are raised to the level of brothers in **1 Chronicles 1**----they are on an equal footing with their uncles! Further, the name Mash is changed into Meshech, because Mash became associated with Meshech, the son of Japheth!

Why should these sons be elevated to the position of fathers of distinct peoples? Because the sons of Aram must have possessed extremely divergent characteristics. Here is the proof! Where are the sons of Meshech or Mash today? We ought to find them in Russia, since that is where Meshech the son of Japheth is! And indeed we do find them there! In the far north of European Russia dwell the little-known Zyrians or Sirians or Syryenians---the name is spelled in half a dozen different ways (ENCY.BRIT.,art. "Syryenians").

They are related to numerous small tribes scattered throughout European Russia. And where are the sons of Hul? According to the Jewish historian Josephus, Hul, the brother of Mash, founded Armenia, a land in the Caucasus between the Black and Caspian Sea (BK. I, chap. vi, sec. 4). The Armenians are a very business-like people. Many have migrated to America. The name "Armenian", like the word "Syryenian" (applied to Mash or Meshech) means a son of Aram, or son of Syria. The ending "-ian" means "son of" in the Armenian tongue!...

Where Are the Canaanites Today?

Originally the sons of Canaan settled in Palestine. Canaan, remember, was the first born of Ham....The Canaanites were great traffickers of old. The word Canaanite in **Zechariah 14:21** is, in fact, translated as "trafficker" in the Jewish translation. The Sidonians, descendants of Canaan, were famous seamen in the days of Solomon. The Greeks called them "Phoenicians" [The term Phoenician also applied to the Israelites who were allied to them – RW]. But the Phoenicians called themselves "Kna" or "Knana", meaning Canaanite. (See SMITH'S BIBLE DICTIONARY).

When Israel entered the land of Palestine under Joshua, whole tribes of the Canaanites were destroyed or driven out of central Palestine (**Judges 3:1-4**) because some of the Canaanites were extremely degenerate in their morals. Now turn to Genesis 10:18, "Afterward were the families of the Canaanites spread abroad". Where did they journey?

The Canaanites settled the island of Malta and parts of Sicily, Southern Italy, Sardinia, North Africa and even Southern Spain and Portugal, where the sons of Javan were already living. (See ENCY.BRIT., articles, "Malta", "Sicily", "Carthage", etc... In North Africa the Canaanites are called Moors----a name probably derived from Amors, the Hebrew form of "Amorites".

From these lands they have spread into North and South America since the days of Columbus. The Portuguese---of mixed Canaanite and Tarshish stock---have settled much of Brazil. And the Sicilians are thick in big cities in America. The underworld "Mafia" organization which springs from Canaanitish Sicily, is but a modern version of their ancient tendency to traffic among the nations of the world.

Canaanites have also intermarried into Esau---Turkey today (**Genesis 26:34**), and Judah (**Genesis 38:2**), and Israel (**Judges 3:5-7**). Only a few Canaanites remain in North Palestine and Lebanon. The Canaanites are seldom included in the prophecies which pertain to this twentieth century. They exert no great position or influence in the world. The main body of non-Jewish inhabitants of Palestine today are not Canaanites, but Philistines!

Who Are the Philistines?

The Philistines are first mentioned in Genesis 10:14 [as descended from Mizraim's son, Casluhim]. They are a branch of the Mizraim, from Ham. Mizraim is commonly applied to Egypt. In fact, "Mizr" is the name which the natives still apply to Egypt today.

The Greeks called the land Aegyptus ---hence our Egypt. Josephus said that not all the people from Mizraim inhabited Africa. But not all of Mizraim live in Egypt today! Where did the children of Mizraim settle?

First, notice that the Mizraim first settled on the northeast corner of the Mediterranean Sea. From there they spread through the Eastern Mediterranean isles and into Africa (ENCYCLOPAEDIA BIBLICA, "Mizraim"). The Philistines, who came from Mizraim, inhabited Southern Palestine even in the days of Abraham (**Genesis 21:34**). They are still there today---in the Gaza strip in Palestine---causing no end of trouble (**Zechariah 9:6-7**).

The Philistines (a branch of the family of Casluhim) settled originally on the island of Crete in the Mediterranean. Crete is called, in the Bible, Caphtor (Jeremiah 47:4 and Amos 9:7) [Other evidence indicates the island of Cyprus was more likely to have been the biblical Caphtor - RW]. The Island of Caphtor was originally settled by the Caphtorim, a tribe of Mizraim (Genesis 10:14).

Both the Philistines and the Caphtorim destroyed the Canaanites in South Palestine and lived in their place (**Deuteronomy 2:23**). No wonder there are so few Canaanites left!

The Pathrusim of **Genesis 10:14** migrated from Asia Minor to central Egypt. Every prophecy shows Pathros to be a part of Egypt along the Nile (**Jeremiah 44:1,5** and **Ezekiel 29:14**). The Naphtuhim probably settled in the extreme south of Egypt, founding the capital city of Napata among the black people of Africa.

The Lehabim---the word "Lehabim" means a people of reddish color---settled Libya originally. Libya is in North Africa. Today they are found scattered throughout the savanahs of the Western Sudan in Africa. In this region today we find a people "of reddish brown or light chestnut color ... with smooth hair, never woolly, straight and even aquiline noses . . .differentiating them from the Negro type" (ENCY.BRIT. art. "fula").

The original word "Lehabim" was shortened in Bible times to "Lubim" (**2 Chronicles.12:3; 16:8**). The Negroes call these people "fulbe", meaning, probably, Lubim dwelling in the ancient land of Phut. In the central reaches of the Sahara (the great desert in North Africa) live the Ludim (**Genesis 10:14**)---the lightest of the Egyptians. Since we are on Africa, let's find where the Negro came from.

The Black Race

A most intriguing question is the origin of the Negro. As a result of the first article on The RACE QUESTION, a few letters came from Ku Klux Klan members contending that the Negro is the only animal who by evolution has risen to the level of created man! What FOLLY! It is almost unbelievable that supposedly sane and rational human beings can conceive of such nonsense. All races---and that includes the Negroes---are descendants of Adam through Noah.

The black race is not composed of supposed "Pre-Adamites", but of the descendants of Ham. Part of the black race stems from Cush (Genesis 10:6). Cush means black in Hebrew (YOUNG's CONCORDANCE).

The word "Cush" is often translated into English by the word "Ethiopia", but not all Cushites live in Ethiopia (an independent nation in East Africa). The Greeks called the children of Cush "Ethiopians". That's why we use the word in English.

Cush first settled around ancient Babylon (**Genesis 10:8-10**). The children of Cush were the original Babylonians, not the Chaldeans who are in Southern Europe today. From Babylon, Cush spread far and wide. Most of the black children of Cush migrated across central Arabia and around the southern coast of Arabia to East Africa.

The Egyptians called East Africa, south of Syene, "Kosh". The Chaldeans and the Assyrians called it "Kushu", (See INTERNATIONAL STAND.BIBLE ENCY., articles "Cush", and "Ethiopia"). Not all Scriptures refer to the Cushite who settled in East Africa. Cush also had sons who went east into Asia rather than Africa.

Here is what Herodotus wrote:

"The Ethiopians from the sun-rise (for [there are] two kinds) ... were marshalled with the Indians, and did not at all differ from [them] in appearance but only in their language, and their hair. For the eastern Ethiopians are straight-haired; but those of (Africa) have hair more curly than that of any other people. These Ethiopians from Asia were accounted (almost the same as the Indian [of India])"(Polymnia, sec.20).

The Brown people of South India and Ceylon are the descendants of Cush! Historians call them Dravidians today. The ancients called them SIBAE (SMITH's CLASSICAL DICT.). Their Bible name was Segba (Genesis 10:7).

Josephus, the Jewish historian, recognized an eastern and a western Cush---one in Asia, the other in Africa (ANTIQUITIES. VI, 2). Herodotus calls them "Asiatic Ethiopians" (Thalia, sec.94). The word translated "Ethiopia", in Ezekiel 38:5 should be properly translated "Cush". It refers primarily to the Asiatic Cush...

The Origin of the Negro

Ham had another son, Phut or Put---it is spelled both ways in the Bible. Here is what Josephus writes about the people of Phut. "Phut also was the founder of Libya (by which he means Africa), and called the inhabitants Phutites, from himself: there is also a river in the country of the Moors which bears that name; whence it is that . . . the Grecian historiographers mention (Africa) by the appellation of Phut" (See ANTIQUITIES, VI, 2).

Put, then, is the father of the west and central Africans, where the true Negroes live today. The Egyptians called the region of the Sudan (which was south of Egypt) by the name of Pet. The Babylonians and Persians called a similar region "Putu" (from SMITH's BIBLE DICTIONARY and INTER.STAN.BIB.ENCY.).

Notice, however, that Put is named before Canaan in **Genesis 10** and in **1 Chronicles 1**. Put was originally settled just south of Asia Minor, between Mizrtaim and the city of Hamath of the Canaanites. From this region Phut spread west and south to Africa, and also east! Numerous sons of Put early settled into the western region of Mesopotamia, a few hundred miles from

ancient Babylon. This is the original center of Hindi, the language of northern and central India (ENCY.OF WORLD HISTORY, by Langer, p.28). This is the same region that some of the sons of Abraham and Keturah settled.

The people who were settled in this region were uprooted by the Assyrians and driven east into India. In India the highest castes were not only called Brahmins, but also Rajputs. The word "Rajput" means "king or chief of Put: (ENCY.BRIT., art., "Raja"). The Indians of Central and North India---being slightly mixed with white stock---vary from light to dark brown. The Rajputs are the most noted warriors of India.

The word "Phut" or "Put" means a warrior in Hebrew. The word Phut is not properly translated "Libya" in **Ezekiel 38:5**. It should be translated Put or Phut, as given in the margin...Of the four sons of Ham, only Cush bears a name which means "black". Just as some of the sons of Cush are brown, so some of the children of Phut mutated racially into black. But this is not all of the story. What is the origin of all the black people of the Isles of Southeast Asia and Australia? How is it that there are Negroid pygmies in Asia and Africa?

Negroes In the Pacific!

This puzzle is easily solved! Bordering on the Black Sea in the Colchis (near eastern Turkey today) lived in ancient times "dark-skinned people", according to historians. This circumstance puzzled even the ancients who thought all black people ought to live in Africa! Black people living in what today is the Caucasus of Russia is merely a confirmation of the fact that civilization commenced with Nimrod, a black man, in Babylon (**Genesis 10:8-10**). His kingdom spread northward from Babel to this very region!

When the Assyrians carried Egyptians and Ethiopians captive (**Isaiah 20**), many were undoubtedly planted in this very region where the remnants of Nimrod's empire had long remained. (see article "Colchis" in ENCY.BRIT.) These people practiced circumcision---just as the black Aborigines of Australia do today! From this region a few hundred miles northwest of Babylon comes the black race of Southeast Asia...

"Lud" a Small People

Shem had a son named Lud (**Genesis 10:22**). Lud early migrated from the Mesopotamian Valley. We read of Lud only as a trading people in the Old Testament. They play no important part in prophecy, but we ought to know where Lud's descendants are today. From the region of Western Mesopotamia, the sons of Lud spread into Western Asia Minor and founded the ancient Kingdom of Lydia. "The Assyrians called Lydia Ludu", says the INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BIBLE ENCYCLOPAEDIA. From Lydia they spread into Europe. Enroute they gave the name Ludias to a river in Macedonia, north of Greece. Nearby, in Thrace, we find the town of Cabyle. A people of the white race called Cabyle or Kabyle are found in North Africa today!

The Romans found the Lydians spread over much of Italy and along the shores of the Adriatic in early times. They called the Lydians Etruscans and Tuscans. In the little communist-controlled country of Albania (next to Greece) the Tosks live today. The BRITANNICA states that these Albanians are probably "identical with Tuscus [and] Etruscans" of Roman times, who were of Lud (art. "Albania"). The Greeks call Albania Arberia, a word akin to Berber or Barbar. Associated with them are the Berbers, or Barbarians. The Greeks probably derived the word Barbarian, meaning non-Greek, from the Berbers of Lud whom they met.

Ezekiel 30:5 gives the definite implication that part of Lud is to be found today in North Africa. Various forms of the name "Albania" are common even today in Italy. From Italy we can trace many Lydians to the East, around the Black Sea, where they founded another Kingdom of Albania in the Caucasus. According to many historians, "the name [Albania] arose from the alleged fact that the people were the descendants of emigrants from Alba in Italy", the BRITANNICA states. In the region of the Caucasus today dwell many small tribes, related to one another racially, but distinct linguistically. They are not related to any other people in Russia. They are known by a dozen different names. Among these are the Georgians from whom Joseph Stalin came. The sons of Lud have not become a great people in the world due to

the backward geographic areas in which they settled. **Isaiah 66:19** describes them today as dwelling among the Latin and Slavic peoples of Europe. Now comes a surprise!

Where Did the American Indian Come From?

Mystery of mysteries! Nearly everyone has puzzled over the origin of the American Indian. Did he come from Mongolia? From Egypt ? From the South Pacific ? Certainly if the Bible has God as its Author, this Book of books could not have overlooked the New World. The Indians must have come from Noah, but from which of his sons?

Look at the table of nations once again. There is one son whom we have not yet located. It is TIRAS! Tiras is mentioned only twice in the entire Bible, in **Genesis 10:2** and in **1 Chronicles 1:6**. The word "Tyros" used for the city of Tyre in Palestine has no relationship with Tiras, the son of Japheth. Tiras journeyed to Asia Minor (present-day Turkey). We can pick up an abundance of historical evidence about the sons of Tiras. In fact there is more historical evidence concerning the migrations of Tiras than of any other son of Japheth. yet the world has never guessed to what land the descendants of Tiras finally migrated!

The river Dniester, which flows into the Black Sea near the border of Romania and the black Sea, was anciently called Tiras. That was the main seat of the people of Tiras for many centuries. These people migrated along the shores of the Black Sea, the Aegaeen and the Mediterranean Seas---before the coming of the Greeks. The Greeks finally displaced them. Where were the people of Tiras driven to?

Before we can answer these questions we must first learn the tribal names into which the family of Tiras subdivided. Here are some of their names: Dyras, Teres, Tauri, Carians, Calybes, Thyni, Amazons, Maias, Milyaes, Mauri, Gasgars.

The names of Tosk, Ketei, Moskas were also applied to them because they passed through lands belonging to other nations. (See SMITH'S CLASSICAL GREEK AND ROMAN DICTIONARY for most of these names.) Where, today, do we find these same people located among the nations? In the NEW WORLD: where the American Indians are!

The Amazons are Indians in South America who gave their names to the Amazon River. The Mayas live in Mexico and Guatemala.

The Tinne' Indians---the Greeks called them Thyni ---live basically in Canada. The Chahta-Muskoki Indians---the Greeks called them Ketei---Moskas---live in the United States. The Tarascan Indians of Mexico are called after "Taras, the name of a tribal god", wrote Daniel G. Brinton in THE AMERICAN RACE. Taras obviously means Tiras. In South America live the Dures Indians, the Doraqsques, and the Turas, the Tauri and the Dauri; the Trios and Atures. In the Caribbean live Calybes---the same tribe that once lived by the Black Sea. Could anything be plainer?

The Mauri, Milyaes and Gasgars migrated from the Mediterranean via Asia Minor into the Indian Ocean. The Gasgars live on the Island of Madagascar. The word "Madagascar" means "Gasgars of the land of Madai !" The Milyaes are the Malayas of Southeast Asia; the Mauri are the Maori of the South Pacific,

The Maori claim to have come from the West by ship from the land of "Raiatea" (AN INTRODUCTION TO POLYNESIAN ANTROPOLOGY, by Peter Buck, p.14). Where was Raiatea? Some lost continent? NO! Raiatea was a land familiar to the Romans. They called it Raetia. It was located south of the Danube River, near the ancient homeland of Tiras (SMITH'S CLASSICAL DICTIONARY).

The people of Tiras are painted on the earliest monuments of the Mediterranean. The color of their skin ?---"of ... reddish-brown complexion . . . with . . . their long black hair done up into a crest !" (quoted from THE SEA-KINGS OF CRETE, by James Baikie, p.74).

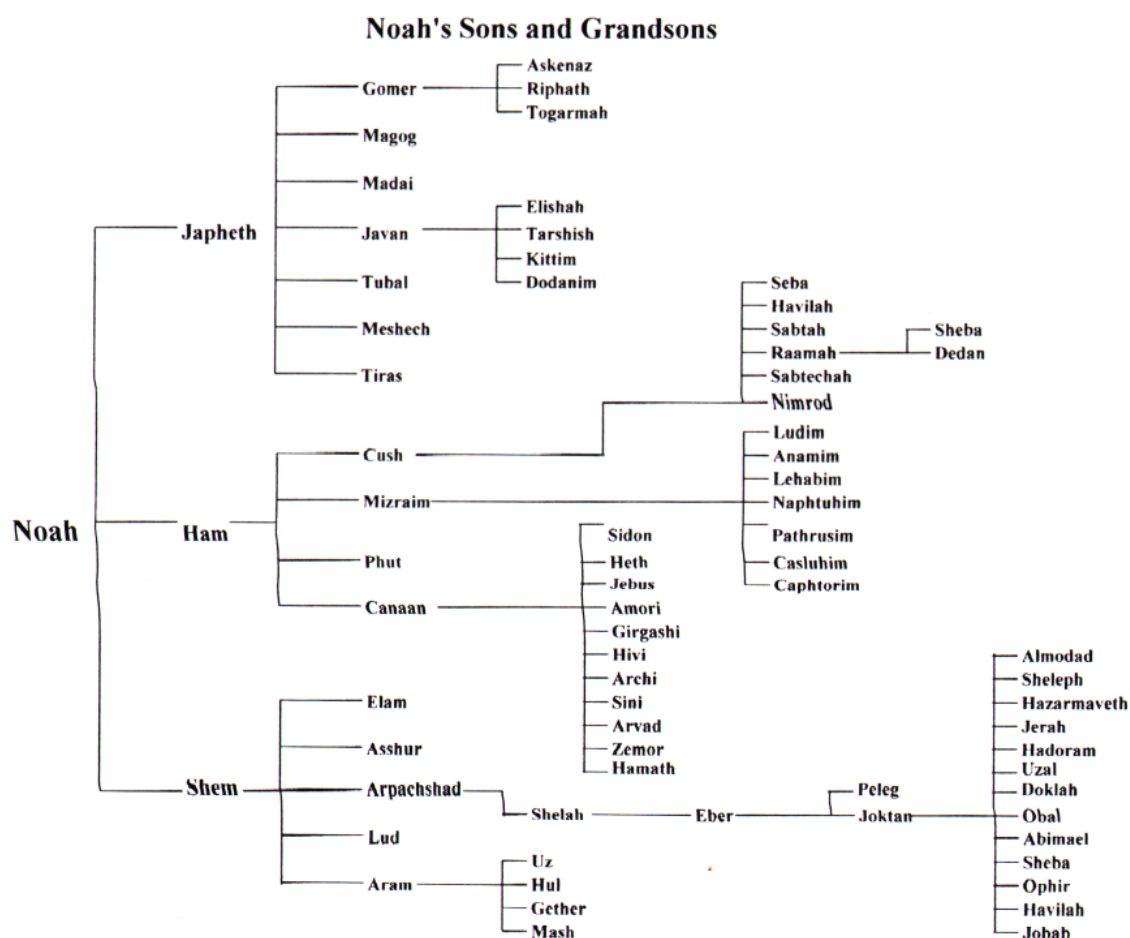
From page 212 we read: "Judging from the surviving pictures, the Minoan men [the Island of Crete where the people of Tiras early settled] were bronzed, with dark hair and beardless faces."

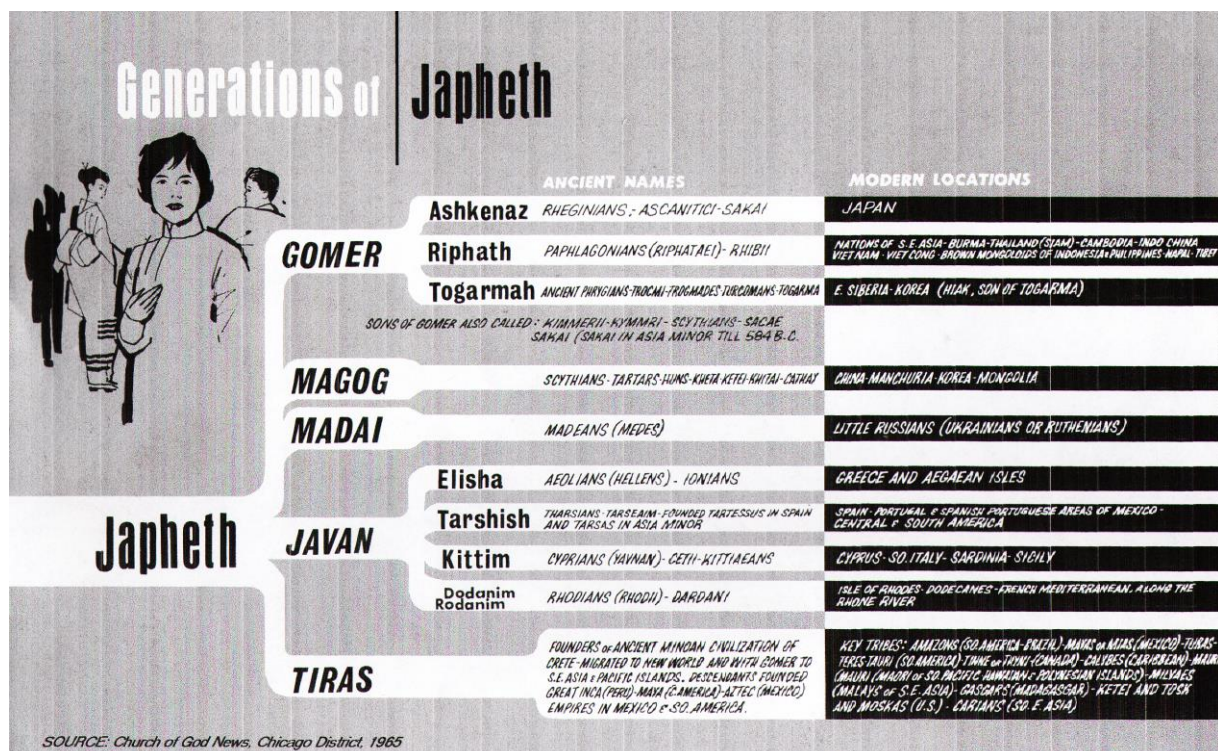
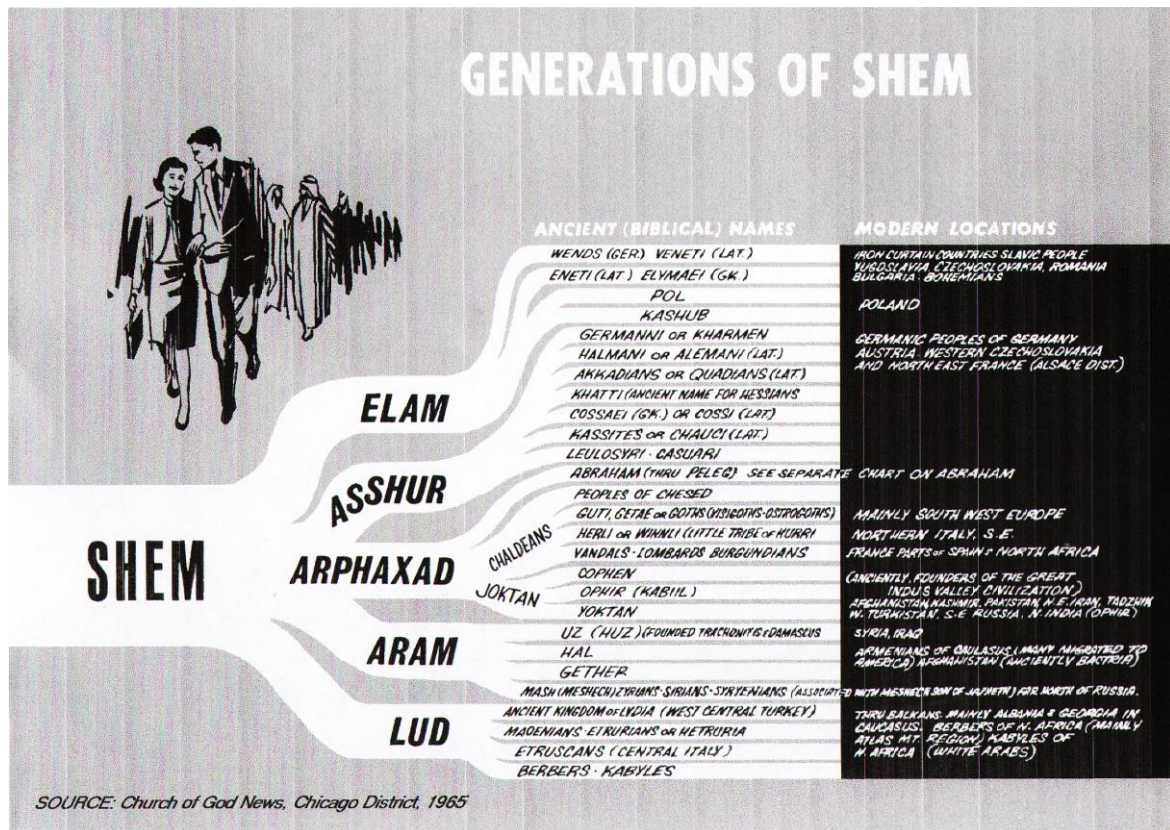
An analysis of the ancient Indian traditions points universally to "an eastern origin"--- across the Atlantic, not the Pacific. (See THE AMERICAN RACE, p.98-99.)

In fact, the word Atlantic was used 2000 years before Columbus discovered America even though it is an American Indian word. Its root is atlan meaning "water". The Mexicans called their temple Teocallis. This word is directly related to the Greek, meaning "place of worship of God". The Greeks called the sons of Tiras, "sea people". The native Indian name Anahuac which the Indians of Mexico apply to the Valley of Mexico, means "around the water".

Only a slight migration may have taken place across the Pacific from Asia to America. The overwhelming movement has been out of the Mediterranean to the New World! That ought not be surprising. The ancient Phoenicians from Palestine left relics on the Azores Island in mid-Atlantic! The Indians have numerous traditions of being ruled over by whites and of expecting whites to come from the East - across the Atlantic.

The following charts show, as best as we can tell (since it is not an exact science) which nations descended from who in the Table of Nations of Genesis 10:





GENERATIONS of HAM



CUSH

KEESH-KESH (GK)
COSSAET (GK)
CASSIA, CUTHIA
SUSIANA -
CHUZISTAN
ETHIOPIA (GK)

MIZRAIM

MESRAIM (GK)
MAZOR
MIZR
AEgyptus

HAM

PHUT

CANAAN

ANCIENT
PHOENICIANS

ANCIENT NAMES

MODERN LOCATIONS

Seba	SIBAE - DRAVIDIANS	BROWN PEOPLE of SO. INDIA & CEYLON ALSO ETHIOPIA
Havilah	GETULI	W. AFRICA
Sabtah	ASTABORANS	ETHIOPIA & S.E. AFRICA
Raamah	{ SHEBA DEDAN } KINGDOM of SHEBA-ORIGINAL (Now PERSIAN GULF	ETHIOPIA & S.E. AFRICA
Sabtechah		ETHIOPIA & S.E. AFRICA
Nimrod	FOUNDER OF BABYLON-REMNANTS OF EMPIRE CALLED SUKHUM - SARAI-AETAS FROM COLCHIS NEAR BLACK SEA	NEGROES IN S.E. ASIA (WITH SONS OF GOMER) AND IN PHILIPPINES (REETAS)-MELANESIAN ISLS & ABORIGINES OF AUSTRALIA
Ludim		SAHARA DESERT IN N. AFRICA - LIGHTEST of ALL EGYPTIANS
Ananim		N. EASTERN AFRICA
Lehabim	LUBIM - LEBU - FULBE	REDISH DARKER PEOPLES of SAVANNAHS of WESTERN SUDAN IN AFRICA
Naphtuhim	NAPATA	SO. EGYPT
Pathrusim	PATHOS	CENTRAL EGYPT
Casluhim	PHILISTINES	GAZA STRIP IN PALESTINE
Caphtorim	ORIGINALLY SETTLED CRETE	GAZA STRIP AREA TODAY
	PET - PETU (EGYPT) - PETU (BABYLONIAN & PERSIAN) PUT - LIBYA (GREEK) (ORIGINAL CENTER OF NIMH - KAPUTS)	WEST & CENTRAL AFRICAN NEGROES - NORTHERN IND. CENTRAL INDIA - NEGROIDS of INDONESIA
Heth	THE ORIGINAL CHATTI - KHETA - HATTI - HITTITES	
Sidon	BUILT ZIDON & TYRE & CARTHAGE	
Amdrite	AMORS - MOORS	
Jebusite		
Girgasite		
Hivite		
Arkite		
Sinite		
Arvadite		
Zemarite		
Hamathite		

SETTLED IN MALTA - SICILY
AND SO. ITALY - SARDINIA -
NORTH AFRICA - SO. SPAIN
AND PORTUGAL - BRAZIL
(PORTUGUESE OF MIXED CANANITE
AND TARSHISH STOCK)

SOURCE: Church of God News, Chicago District, 1965

The Migrations of the Tribes of Israel

The northern Kingdom of Israel (Israelites but NOT Jews) were eventually conquered by Assyria in 709 BC and carried away to near the shores of the Caspian Sea. They included the birthright tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh and eventually became known as the "Lost Tribes of Israel".

Stephen Collins in his book "The Lost Ten Tribes of Israel...Found!" has produced evidence that shows that like the British empire Israel, starting from the time of Solomon's great empire, also had colonies in many places around the world such as Carthage in North Africa and even in North America. He writes:

Earlier Israelite nations and empires also fulfilled many of the birthright promises to Abraham. The Phoenician/Israelite Empire under King Solomon controlled Gibraltar, many land trade routes, the Mediterranean Sea, the Atlantic Ocean [blocking the Romans and Greeks out of the Mediterranean] and much of the Indian Ocean. Carthage also controlled Gibraltar, the Western Mediterranean, and the Atlantic sea routes to North America.

The Parthians and Scythians [both peoples predominantly Israelite] were land powers, not naval powers, but their strategic location controlled the world's overland trade routes between the continents of Europe, Africa and Asia, and Parthia controlled the strategic "Caspian Gates" which sat astride the invasion routes of ancient Asia (p. 390).

Evidence is coming forth to show the Israelite and Phoenician sailors may have visited distant places such as Australia (where hieroglyphics have been found – Egypt was allied to Israel in Solomon's day) and Hawaii (the Hebrew for priest, 'kohen', is almost identical to the Hawaiian word for priest – 'kuhuna' and 'aloha' includes al close to el, Hebrew for God, being a greeting that essentially means "God be with you").

Before the northern Kingdom of Israel was conquered by Assyria many Israelites migrated to Carthage. Carthage and Rome fought epic wars. Hannibal routed the Romans in Italy after crossing the Alps but lost the campaign in the end. He was named after the god Baal as Carthage was heavily into Baal worship. Rome eventually destroyed Carthage which practiced child sacrifice on a large scale. Some Carthaginians fled to "Israelite" colonies in Spain, Britain and North America.

The southern Kingdom of Judah was conquered and taken into exile by the Babylonians around 585 BC. After Babylon fell the majority of the Jews migrated north-west along with the Israelites exiled earlier in Assyria. A remnant of the Jews returned to Palestine after Babylon fell. Jesus Christ was born amongst the Jews in Palestine 500 years later.

The Scriptures show that those who volunteered to return and rebuild a Jewish presence in Judea came almost exclusively from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin and Levi (Nehemiah 11:3-36). We find no scriptural evidence — or other historical evidence — that any significant numbers from the other tribes were included in Judah's return to their homeland.

In 70 AD the Jewish people revolted against the Romans and were defeated and consequently scattered amongst the nations for nearly 2 000 years until the Jewish state of Israel was created in 1948.

It is understandable that many people would believe that there is not any history to back up the belief that the English speaking peoples are descended from the ancient nation of Israel as very few mainstream historians have even bothered to study the roots of the British people before their time in Germany and Central Europe prior to migrating across the English Channel.

Those few historians who have written on the roots of the British people before then are in agreement that prior to their time in Central Europe they migrated from the area known as Scythia around present-day Ukraine and Armenia.

The Jewish Encyclopedia states the following about the connection between the Nordic peoples of NW Europe and the House of Israel:

The identification of the Sacae, or the Scythians [recognised by historians as the ancestors of the British peoples] with the Ten Tribes because they appear in history at the SAME TIME and very nearly in the SAME PLACE, as the Israelites removed by Shalmaneser, is one of the chiefs supports of the theory which identifies the English people, and indeed the whole Teutonic race, with the Ten Tribes.

Dan is identified sometimes with Denmark and sometimes with the Tuatha da Danaan of Irish Tradition (p.250)

The Jewish people, descended mainly from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin and Levi, are fairly visible to the world today but where did the other tribes, known as the "lost" ten tribes of Israel, go to? Let's look at the evidence that points to where they migrated to.

Whilst in Samaria, the house of Israel became known as the "House of Omri" (**1 Kings 16:23**) or Beth-Omri and the Black Obelisk of Shalmaneser II, now in the British Museum, reveals the Assyrian equivalent of "Omri" as Khumri and the "House of Omri" as Bit-Khumri. This is the origin of the Babylonian title Gimiri.

Israelite territory was called "Bit-Khumri" (The Ancient Records of Assyria and Babylonia, Vol.1, p46).

This is also confirmed in Hastings Dictionary of the Bible which says:

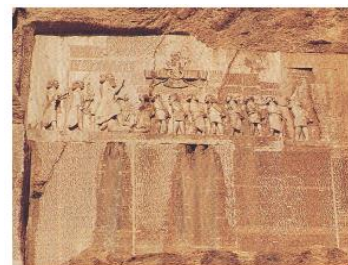
The Assyrians first became acquainted with Israel in the time of Omri, and they called the country of the TEN TRIBES OF ISRAEL 'the land of the house of Omri' even after the extinction of his dynasty (Vol.1, Article, Omri, p.688).

Raymond McNair in "Keys to North West European Origins" says the following:

Here follows excerpts from a translation of the Behistun Rock Inscriptions by L.W.King and R.Thompson, "Thus sayeth Darius, the king, 'These are the provinces which are subject unto me, and by the grace of Auramanda became I king of them'" (The inscriptions of Darius the Great of Behistun).

This translation translates all of the words on the Behistun Rock Inscriptions in three parallel columns. The first column contains the Persian, the second the Susian or the Elamite, the third contains the Babylonian translation.

These inscriptions mention twenty two provinces. The nineteenth province listed by all three of these parallel columns is called in the Persian language "Scythia" (Phonetic: Saka), in the second column this same province is called in the Susian language



The Behistun Rock Inscription of Persian king Darius I with its tri-lingual inscriptions in the Persian, Elamite and Babylonian languages.

"Scythia" (Phonetic: Sakka) and the third column in the Babylonian language is translated, "in the land of the Cimmerians" (Phonetic: Gi-mi-ri) (p.132).

Cimmerians is merely a corruption of Samaritans while Sacae or Sakka is derived from the patriarch Isaac. According to Gawler in his book "Our Scythian Ancestors":

The word Saacae is fairly and without straining our imagination translatable as Isaacites (p.6).

The name Saxons is also derived from Sacsons meaning Isaac's sons. The words Scythian and Scot appear likely to have been derived from the Hebrew Succoth which means a tabernacle or temporary dwelling.

Whether at the same time these Gimiri or Saka are really Cymric Celts we can not positively say...But...the Babylonian title of Gimiri, as applied to the Sacae, is not a vernacular but a foreign title, and may simply mean THE TRIBES (History of Herodotus, Bk. IV., Appendix, Note 1).

No nation or people have been spoken for so long and so consistently by the words "the tribes" as the people of Israel.

According to the Behistun Rock Inscriptions the Gimiri (Ghomri) were the same people as the Cimmerians, the Sacae and the Scythians, who gave birth to the Cymri Celts, Saxons, Goths and other peoples of North-Western Europe. Sharon Turner states that:

The Kimmerioi of the Greeks were the Kimbroi of the Greeks, and the Cimbri (Kimbri) of the Latin writers (History of the Anglo-Saxons, p.28).

Robert Owen in his book "The Kymry" says:

In leaving the far east, they, the Kimmerians or Kymry must have occupied a country south of the Caucasus, extending from the river Araxes to the Palus Haboria or Sea of Azof, where Herodotus remarks on the many places yet bearing the name of Kimmerian in his time (The Kymry, p.11).

This is exactly where the Israelites were exiled to by the Assyrians! Wales today is known as Cymru in the Welsh language. Grant says that:

The Nordics also swept down through the Thrace into Greece and Asia Minor, while other large and important groups entered Asia partly through the Caucasus Mountains but in greater strength they migrated around the northern and eastern sides of the Caspian-Aral Sea (The Passing of the Great Race, p.214).

Again we see that the ancestors of the Anglo-Saxons and Scandinavians migrated from exactly the same area that the Israelites were deported to after the Assyrians invaded Israel.

The Israelites after their exile became known as the Scythians around the northern shore of the Black Sea and the Sacae or Sakka in the area of Persia. They came via the Danube, Central Europe, Greece and the Baltic into Scandinavia, Britain and North-West Europe after numerous different migrations. In "History of the Anglo-Saxons" Sharon Turner writes:

The Anglo-Saxon, Lowland Scot, Normans, Danes have all sprung from that great fountain of the human race which we have distinguished by the term Skythian or Gothic...Sakai-Suna or the Sons of Sakai, abbreviated into Saksun, which is the same sound as Saxon, seems a reasonable etymology of the word "Saxon" (Vol.1, p.56, 87).

God prophesied in the Bible, "In Isaac your seed shall be called" (**Genesis 21:12**) and the Saxons or Sacasons are, in fact, the sons of (I)saca. John Wilson in his Languages of Europe states that:

The basis of the English language may, to a remarkable extent, be found in Hebrew. Many of our most common words, and names of familiar objects, are almost pure Hebrew.

The very name "British" is derived from Hebrew. The Hebrew word for "covenant" is beriyth, or berith while the Hebrew word "ish" means man. The word "British" means "covenant man.

The Scythian language indicates that the Scyths were descendants of the Hebrew-speaking "Lost Ten Tribes". The Scyths spoke Scythiac which is classified this way:

Scythiac...Scythian (language)...There is a strong similarity between Hebrew and the Scythian languages (A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles, 1971 ed., Vol.VII, art., "Scythiac").

Some fascinating supporting proof for identifying the modern day descendants of ancient Israel with the English-speaking nations has come recently via the evidence of language. Terry Blodgett, a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (the Mormon church) independently came to the belief America and Britain were descended from the tribes of Israel based on the evidence of language.

He was a language professor focusing mainly on German. One day he was asked to teach Hebrew which he had not previously studied. In the course of learning Hebrew he discovered the same phonetic shifts (similar letters being widely substituted very suddenly) in the Hebrew that he was familiar with in the Germanic languages (including English). He wrote a university dissertation on it which can be found online at <http://rogerswebsite.com/others/Phonological-Similarities-in-Germanic-&-Hebrew.pdf>

The Scythians were nomads, dwelling mainly in tents from which the word Scythian is derived.

The Scythians...apparently first appear in written history in the annals of Esarhaddon (the Assyrian king from 681-668 B.C.) and seem to be centred at that time in what is today Northwest Iran (The Anchor Bible Dictionary, Vol.5, art.Scythians).

Stephen Collins in his book "The Lost Ten Tribes of Israel...Found!" writes:

The Parthians and Scythians are the people written about by Josephus as the extremely numerous descendants of the ten tribes of Israel. Josephus, who lived in the first century A.D., wrote the following about the ten tribes of Israel:

"The ten tribes are beyond the Euphrates till now, and are an immense multitude, and not to be estimated by numbers" (Antiquities of the Jews, Book XI, Chapter V, Section 2, Emphasis added).



At the time that Josephus wrote the Euphrates River had long been the recognized border between the Roman and Parthian Empires. For Josephus to write (from his perspective within the Roman Empire) that the ten tribes were beyond the Euphrates River was another way of saying the ten tribes were "in Parthia", even as many Americans would recognize the phrase "beyond the Rio Grande" as a euphemism for "in Mexico" (p.220).

Raymond McNair in his booklet "America and Britain in Prophecy" has this piece of archaeological evidence showing the lost tribes of Israel did migrate to the Crimea in Ukraine where the Scythians were said to dwell:

How these people had gotten there is recorded in an amazing epigraph found on another tombstone in this same region. Here is C. Coffin's translation of A.E. Harkavy's German version (published in Academia Scientiarum Imperialis Memoires, St. Petersburg, vol. 24, no. 1, 1863, p. 9):

"I Jehuda ben Mose ha-Nagolon of the East country, ben Jehuda ha-Gibbor of the tribe of Naphtali, of the generation Schillem, who went into the exile with the exiles, who were driven away with Hosea, the king of Israel, together with the tribes of Simeon and Dan and some of the generations of the other tribes of Israel, which (all) were led into exile by the enemy Shalmanesser from Schomron [Samaria] and their cities to Chalach [Halah], that is, Backack and to Chabar [Habor], that is, Chabul and to Hara, that is, Herat, and to Gosan [Gozan], the cities of the exiled tribes of Reuben, Gad and the half of Manasseh, which Pilneser [Tiglath-Pileser] drove into exile and settled there (and from there they scattered themselves over the whole land of the East as far as Sinim)--when I returned from wandering in the land of their exile and **from journeying in the dwelling places of the descendants of their generations in their resting places of the Land of Krim [the Crimea].**"

The Parthians who ruled where present day Iran and Iraq are had priests known as Magi.

As Christ was a descendant of David he would have been of great interest to the ruling class of the Parthians as noted by the caravan of the Magi sent around his birth.

This connection with the Parthian ruling class may have been a big part of the reason for the reluctance that the Romans had to crucify Christ, only doing so when backed into it by the Jewish religious leaders.

Pilate was a vicious man by all accounts yet he wanted no part in Christ's death.

Parthia had held its own against the might of the Rome and Rome had concluded a peace treaty around the birth of Christ and Rome made it clear to Pilate not to antagonise Parthia.

Parthia was eventually conquered by the Sassanid Arabs in 226 AD. Unlike the Parthians, the Sassanids were religiously intolerant and these Persian Arabs drove out the Causasians who lived peacefully within the former Parthian empire.

This included not only the Israelites (today's British and NW Europeans) but also the descendants of the Assyrians (today's Germans) and the descendants of the Elamites (today's East European Slavic peoples).

One of the names applied by the Romans to these Caucasian tribes was Germans.

The word "German" means war-man and is a generic term. This name is a label used historically for both Israelite tribes and today's German peoples though they are "racially" different. Though both are white peoples, Germans are anthropologically more broad-headed (brachicephalic) while Nordic peoples of NW Europe are long-headed (dolichocephalic).

There were three primary migrations of the Israelites into Europe. Firstly, there were two smaller movements – one into Central Europe and the British Isles.

The other went via the Mediterranean and Spain and Portugal. The Celtic peoples of the British Isles were mostly from these.

The far greater movement of people occurred after the fall of the Parthian empire in 226 AD. The religiously intolerant Arabs drove out the vast majority of the Caucasian peoples from the Middle East up through Armenia and over the Caucasus Mountains and into Europe. A telling sign of this mass migration is the very name for white people – Caucasian.

Magi from Parthia visit Jesus at His Birth

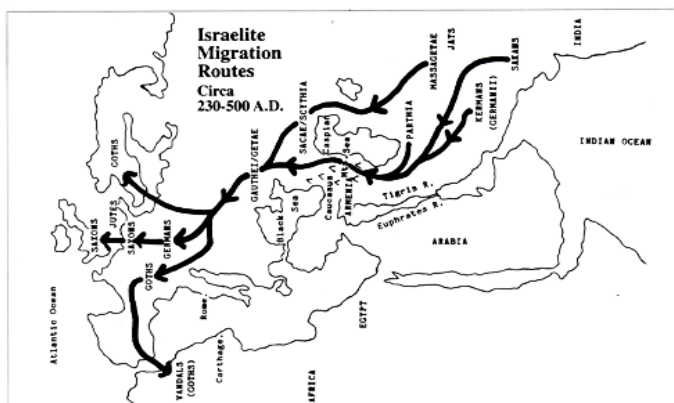
Matthew 2:1-3

Behold, wise men came from *the east* to Jerusalem, saying, Where is He *who is* born king of the Jews? For we have seen His star in the east and have come to worship Him. But when Herod the king heard these *things*, he was troubled, and ALL Jerusalem with him.



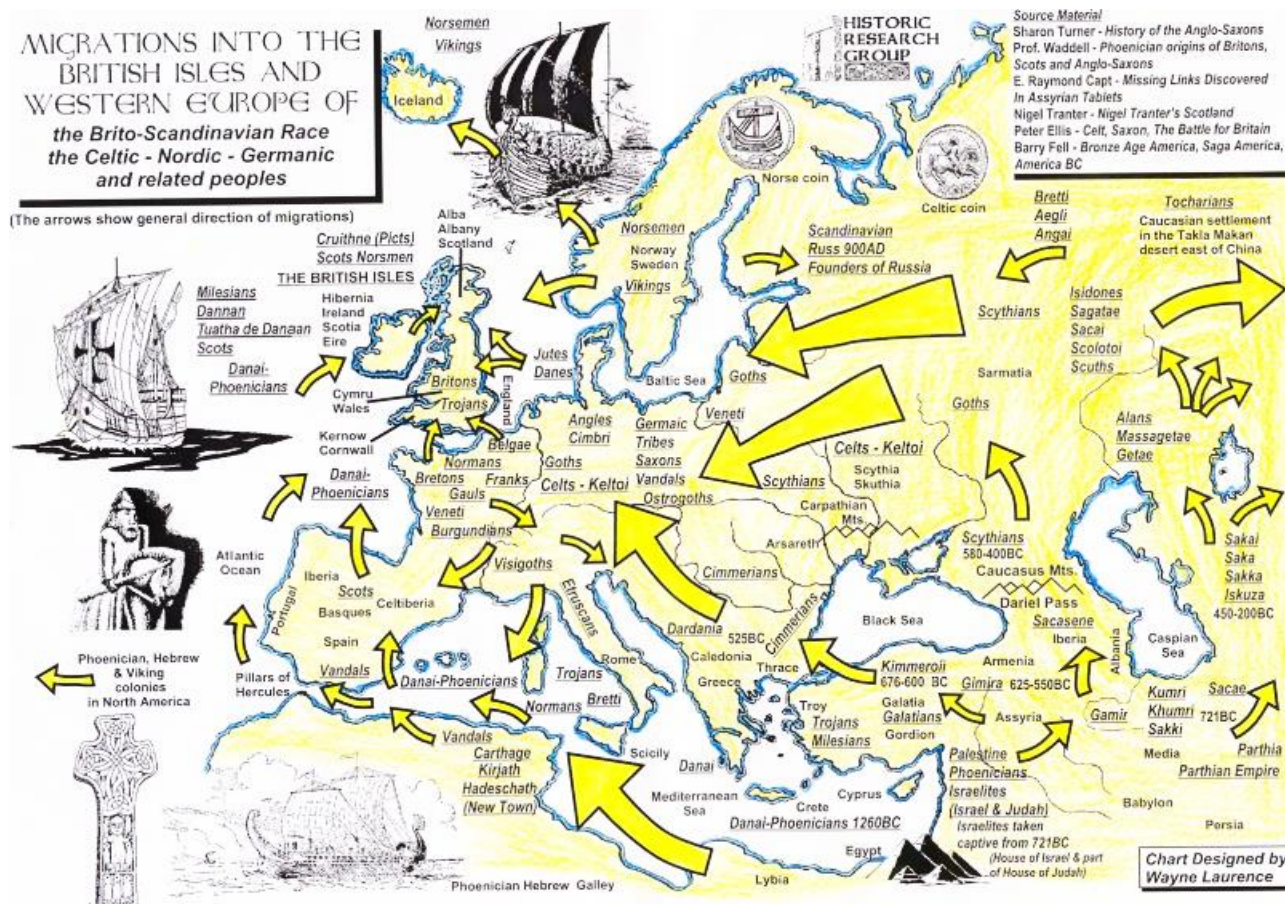
Fall of Parthia (226 AD) catalyst for Great Caucasian Migration into Europe

Israelites to North-West Europe
Assyrians to Germany
Elamites to Eastern Europe



MIGRATIONS INTO THE BRITISH ISLES AND WESTERN EUROPE OF the Brito-Scandinavian Race the Celtic - Nordic - Germanic and related peoples

(The arrows show general direction of migrations)



Some of the most fascinating recent historical information that has come to light in recent years has been the research of Steven Collins who has written a series of books on the migrations of the Israelites. He has uncovered a great deal of new material on the Parthian Empire and in the final book of his series entitled "Israel's Tribes Today" he makes a pivotal and well-documented connection between the Semitic peoples of the Parthian Empire being driven into Europe following the fall of the Parthian Empire.

Below are some extracts quoted at length from "Israel's Tribes Today" showing some of his research into this fascinating story of the great Caucasian migration into Europe following the fall of the Parthian Empire in 226 AD:

Many native people ruled by the Parthians did not share [their] racial and cultural origins, and they resented the surge of Semitic culture and religion washing around them. One such people were the non-Semitic Persians. The Persians [Sassanid Arabs] were Zoroastrians, and regarded the Parthians as heretics for slipping away from Zoroastrianism to other religions. One historian comments that 'the Parthians had fallen away from the strict practice and belief in that faith [Zoroastrianism], and had become idolaters, one of the forms of this idolatry being a religious reverence paid to the early monarchs of the Arsacidae.'

All Parthian faiths — including Christianity, Judaism and the worship of the early Arsacids — were considered 'idolatry' by the Zoroastrian Persians. Of course, to many Parthians, the Zoroastrians were the real idolaters. This indicates that the Persian-Parthian conflict was also a "religious war," as historian S. G. W. Benjamin, wrote in his 1888 book, Persia: 'The Persians...took offense at the religious practices of the Parthians; this was probably one of the reasons that led them finally to revolt.'

The Persians moved quickly to reestablish Zoroastrianism as the 'state religion' under their first ruler, Ardashir. In The Heritage of Persia, Richard Frye states: 'Later Sassanian

tradition...traces the beginnings of all institutions of church and state back to Ardashir. He is the ruler who reinstated or resurrected the Old Persian Empire with its various institutions as well as the religion of Zoroaster which had been in eclipse under...the Parthians'.

The Persians also quickly installed Persian rulers over all the conquered provinces of the Parthian Empire, including the old Parthian homeland itself. Persian zeal for Zoroastrianism as a 'state religion' would have made life untenable for those who practiced other religions, such as Christianity, Judaism, or the worship of Arsacid ancestors. The new Persian ruler, Ardashir, quickly: '...devoted his attention to the...strengthening of the national religion. He caused the idols of the Parthians to be destroyed and ordered a general restoration of the doctrines of Zoroaster throughout the empire.'

Gone was the old Parthian custom of religious tolerance. In its place Zoroastrianism was imposed as a state religion. Since the Persians regarded Semitic religions and culture as a threat to their rule, the logical assumption is that they sought to kill, harass or banish Semitic populations and customs. In this regard the war of the non-Semitic Persians against the Semitic Parthians was a race war as well as a religious war, a Persian-Zoroastrian 'Jihad' against Parthian-Semitic influences. The Parthians had no desire to remain in the region as mere subjects of the Persians, a people they had ruled for centuries. However, the strong Persian persecutions of the Semitic language, religion and customs of the Parthians made it imperative for the Parthians to migrate elsewhere.

The Parthians were not the only targets of the Persian zealots. It is recorded that Persia began its rebellion against Parthia, not by directly attacking the Parthians, but by attacking two Parthian allies: Carmania (or 'Kerman') and Media. The Kermans were also called the 'Germanii'...

The Parthian Empire collapsed in 226 A.D. and millions of its Semitic refugees fled toward Armenia for safety. Armenia was a mountainous region that could not support a lot of refugees, so most of the Parthian refugees traveled northward from Armenia toward the Black Sea region. The Parthians had inhabited and ruled the 'Iranian' region for almost five centuries prior to their flight toward the Black Sea. The Parthian heavy cavalry was famous for its armored horsemen with 'coats of mail.' The Parthians were fellow tribesmen of the Scythians, and many Scythians, such as the Massagetae, had lived in the Parthian Empire for centuries.

Just four years after the Parthian Empire collapsed and its people fled toward Armenia and the Black Sea, we have a new nation of "Goths" which was "heavily-influenced by the former Iranian inhabitants of the country." Who were these "former Iranians?" Obviously, they were the Parthian refugees who had just fled from Iran, the hinterland of Parthia's Empire, in huge numbers! Lucien Musset's account notes that the kings of this new nation of Goths were still wearing "Iranian" clothing! For almost five centuries prior to the birth of this new nation of "Goths" the words "Parthian" and "Iranian" were virtually synonymous!...

The term "Caucasian" is a traditional, historic name commonly applied to the white race. The dictionary definition indicates that it is a traditional term, not a scientific one. It is important to realize, however, that the term "Caucasian" has long served as a synonym for "the white race" because so many whites poured into Europe via the Caucasus mountain region.

The Parthians and Scythians were members of the white race, a conclusion invariably supported by the evidence and all their self-portrayals on coins and artwork. Their forced migration out of Parthia and Scythia and into Europe was one of the greatest migrations, in terms of the sheer number of people involved, in the entirety of human history!

Because Parthia's history has been widely ignored, few comprehend why an almost endless stream of white "Caucasian" tribes and nations came spilling out of Asia into Europe as refugees, beginning in the third century, A.D. The reason for this mass migration is obviously the fall of the great Semitic Parthian Empire in the third century, A.D.! Yet history texts recoil from identifying the Asian source of all these migrating nations, as if making such identification were an intellectual taboo.



These refugee nations and tribes of Caucasians pouring into Europe from Asia did not come from Siberia, a 'black hole,' or from 'the mists of history.' **THEY CAME FROM PARTHIA AND SCYTHIA!** As a result of this incredible historical omission, millions of modern Caucasians do not realize that their ancestors comprised the population of the ancient Parthian Empire, one of the largest empires of the ancient world!...

Stuart Piggott's 1965 book, *Ancient Europe*, also documented that the Scythians had sent some groups of settlers into Europe centuries before Parthia fell. Piggott wrote:

"Historically the Scyths are known as speakers of an Indo-European language...Westwards they moved into the Carpathians, forming local groups of Scythian culture in Transylvania and on the Hungarian plain, and were pursued by Darius about 512 B.C...there is evidence for Scythian trade and even raiding into north-eastern and Western Europe"...

By the time Parthia fell in 226 A.D., the Scythians were very familiar with European geography and they had already settled outposts of Scythians in Central and Eastern Europe. As Parthia's refugees poured into the traditional Scythian region north of the Black Sea, their Scythian kinsmen could easily direct the land-hungry Parthian refugees to areas of Europe which could support their large numbers.



Other historians have also recorded the great movement of the Scythians and their Parthian kinsmen into Europe. John Mitchel's, *"History of Ireland"* stated in 1869:

"...all Europe had been peopled by the Cimmerians or Scythians from the borders of the Euxine Sea."

The Black Sea was called the "Euxine Sea" in ancient times, and this account acknowledges that the population base of 'all Europe' originated from the Scythian tribes who once lived by the Black Sea.

Sharon Turner's epic 1836 work, *The History of the Anglo-Saxons*, is more specific:

"The Anglo-Saxons, Lowland Scotch, Normans, Danes, Norwegians, Swedes, Germans, Dutch, Belgians, Lombards and Franks have all sprung from that great fountain of the human race, which we have distinguished by the terms Scythian, German or Gothic."

This account acknowledges that most nations in Northern, Western and Central Europe descended from the massive waves of Caucasians who poured into Europe from Asia. This fact is well-known. Even establishment sources acknowledge this fact. What has been hidden from people's awareness is the fact that these Caucasian migrations into Europe were caused by the Parthians and Scythians pouring into Europe after the sudden collapse of the mighty Parthian Empire in 226 A.D.

That fact has been hidden, because if the Parthian and Scythian Empires were examined in any depth, their Semitic-Israelite origins would become quickly known. The existence and history of Parthia and Scythia powerfully support the Bible, so these empires have been censored out of the history texts. As a result, the modern Caucasian nations have no idea where their ancestors came from or what their true heritage is!

The Parthian and Scythian refugees arrived at the Black Sea region as a migrating mass of millions of essentially "homeless" people, bringing with them only what they could carry on their backs, and on their horses and wagons. They needed to secure food, clothing and shelter, and to reorganize themselves. Given the massive and total dislocation suffered by these it took years for them to get reestablished. However, after two or three decades, they were sufficiently regrouped to go to war again in an organized fashion to obtain more land for their people. Parthia's old enemy, Rome, was about to experience their angry power.

In 256 A.D., Gothic tribes "crossed the Carpathians and drove the Romans from Dacia." In other words, the Goths left the region north of the Black Sea, crossed the Carpathian Mountains and entered Balkan Europe in formidable numbers. It was noted above that the Goths' homeland was also the "Scythian" homeland. The Goths were not the only "Scythian" people migrating into Europe. Sharon Turner's *History of the Anglo-Saxons* adds:

"...the Scythian tribes. They have become better known to us, in recent periods, under the name of Getae and Goths, the most celebrated of their branches...In the days of Caesar, the most advanced tribes of the Scythians, or Gothic race, were known to the Romans under the name of Germans...That the Getae were Goths cannot be doubted. The Getae were the same as the Daci, or as they were more anciently called, Davi..."

The Goths, Germans and Dacians were the Scythian tribes. However, the Parthian refugees would have been included among the Scythian tribes contributing to the sea of Goths and Germans pouring into Europe, as the Parthians were themselves a branch of the Scythian nation. Notice also that the ancient name of the Scythian branch known as 'Daci' (Dacians) was the 'Davi.' This latter name preserves the name of the founder of the ancient Israelite Empire, King David...

The Goths exhibited Scythian cultural traits when they migrated into Europe in great numbers. Tamara Talbot Rice's book "The Scythians" comments that "Fleeing Goths spread [the] Scytho-Sarmatian style through Central and Southern Europe as early as 200-300 A.D.," indicating that the Scythian origin of the Goths is an evident fact. Indeed, we have now reached the point in history where the terms "Parthian" and "Scythian" disappear. The tribes formerly known by those names are called 'Goths,' 'Germans' and other names when they invade Europe.

However, it is very clear that the Gothic and German tribes invading Roman Europe were mostly displaced Parthians and Scythians. In the 3rd century A.D. millions of fair-skinned, Semitic Parthians and Scythians were driven out of Asia toward the Caucasus Mountains and

the Black Sea region. In the 3rd century A.D., millions of fair-skinned, Caucasian Goths and Germans begin pouring into Europe from the Black Sea region in a human tidal wave looking for new homelands. The connection between these two events is clear, obvious, and conclusive!...

Not all of the migrating Parthians and Scythians came to be known as Goths or Germans. One of the famous branches of the Germanic tribes entering Europe from the east was the Saxons. Sharon Turner comments on their Scythian origins:

"The Saxons were a German or Teutonic, that is, a Gothic or Scythian tribe; and of the various Scythian nations which have been recorded, the Sakai, or Sacae, are the people from whom the descent of the Saxons may be inferred...The Sakai...were an important branch of the Scythian nation...Ptolemy mentions a Scythian people, sprung from the Sakai, by the name of the Saxones...There was a people called Saxoi, on the Euxine [the Black Sea], according to Stephanus."

There is evidence that the word 'Goth' comes from the Gothic word "Guth" which meant "God"... Col. J. C. Gawler, an official of the British Government in the 19th century, quoted a book by M. Saiman written in 1818 entitled *Researches in the East; an Important Account of the Ten Tribes*. Gawler says:

"It states on page 25, that on the authority of several Armenian historians, the ten tribes passed into Tartary. It also quotes Ortelius, who, it says, in his description of Tartary, notes the kingdom of Arsareth, where the ten tribes retiring...took the name of Gauthei because, he says, they were very jealous of the glory of God."

This record that the Israelites, when first fleeing into the Black Sea region from the Assyrians, took the name "Gauthei" out of a zeal for God, argues that the Gauthei or Goths did, indeed, name themselves after God. Since the Goths lived in the same region in which the term "Gauthei" originated, it follows that the term "Goth" was simply a more recent form of the word "Gauthei". Bradley also cites Gothic literature in which is found the word: "Gut-thiuda, [meaning] people of the Goths." The word thiuda is the same as the Old-English theod, meaning people...There is good reason to conclude that the Goths considered themselves to be the "people of God." Once it is understood that they were the descendants of the ten tribes of Israel, it is logical that their Israelite ancestors believed themselves to be the "people of God"...

If history texts gave the Parthian Empire the prominent attention its position in the ancient world merits, it would be impossible to miss the Parthian origin of the masses of refugee Caucasians pouring into Europe...

We know the Parthians had a Semitic culture when they exited Parthia, because their Semitic culture is what drove the Persians to expel them. Parthian coins and Scythian artwork confirm their people had white, Caucasian features. Only the fallen empire of Parthia could have provided the many nations and tribes of refugees which poured into Europe promptly after the fall of the Parthian Empire. Yet history texts seem unwilling to make the obvious, easy connection between their dispersion and the arrival of many tribes of 'Caucasian' refugees arriving in Europe right after Parthia's collapse. Curious, isn't it? (*Israel's Tribes Today*, p.7-10, 20, 26-30, 32, 38-39)"

Prior to the Roman occupation of Britain the lands of England, Scotland, Ireland and Wales were populated by the Celts who were a mixture of Judah (Scots), Levi (Wales, Cornwall & originally much of England) and Danites (Irish).

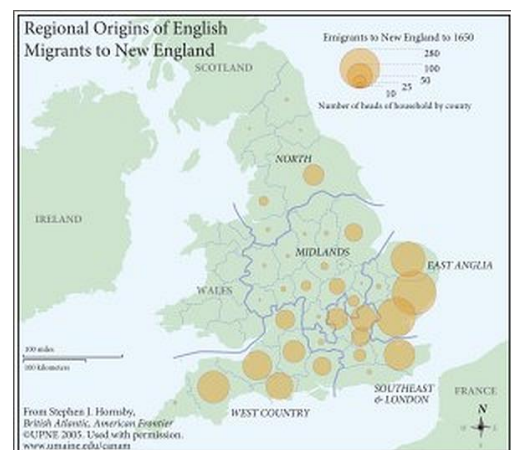
The Britons were the original Celts in England. King Arthur of legend has a name derived from Ashur which includes Thur/Thor (Arthur's sword is the equivalent of Thor's hammer). Many of the Britons were evangelized by Joseph of Arimathea and some of the apostles who were charged by Christ to preach to the lost sheep of the House of Israel (**Matthew 10:6**). In the fifth and sixth centuries AD the Angles (Manassites) and the Saxons (Ephraimites) crossed the English Channel from western Germany.



The Angles settled primarily in the eastern Anglia counties such as Norfolk and Suffolk. The Saxons settled the rest of England and pushed the original Britons (Levites) in England further west to Wales and Cornwall.

By far the heaviest concentration of people who migrated to America from England came from the Anglia counties where the Angles had settled.

God was separating many people of the half-tribe of Manasseh from their Ephraimite brothers. Strangely enough, the Angles, whose descendants comprise much of America's population, gave their name to England which means "Angle-land".



John Ogwyn makes these comments on this migration from Britain to America:

Professor David Fischer points out in his important book, *Albion's Seed*, during those two centuries (17th and 18th centuries) there were four main waves of immigration to the future United States. These waves of migration had their origin in specific parts of the British Isles and came to particular areas of the American colonies.

New England, for instance, was settled primarily by immigrants from East Anglia. Certain parishes of this south-eastern part of England were almost emptied of population between 1629 and 1641, as whole family groups migrated en masse. "Today, East Anglia seems very rural by

comparison with other English regions. But in the early 17th century, it was the most densely settled and highly urbanized part of England, and had been so for many centuries" (Albion's Seed, p. 43).

Overwhelmingly, the immigrants who settled the United States before the Civil War came from northwestern Europe. Most were from either the British Isles or certain parts of northern Germany. These immigrants established the character of the American nation and have provided most of the nation's leadership until this day [By as late as 1980 about 80% of the USA had ethnicity from NW Europe].

Even some whose ancestors immigrated later from other parts of Europe may well have had Israelitish background. After all, the prophecy was made by Amos that the House of Israel would be sifted through the nations like corn through a sieve, but not a grain would be lost (**Amos 9:9**) (The United States and Great Britain in Prophecy, p.36).

Raymond McNair in his booklet "America and Britain in Prophecy" has these fascinating comments on the migrations from northern Germany to Britain and America:

In a 1915 article "Are We Cousins to the Germans?" Sir Arthur Keith wrote that "the Briton and German represent contrasted and opposite types of humanity" (The Graphic, Dec. 4, p. 720). He explained, "The radical difference in the two forms leaps to the eye. In the majority of the Briton - English, Welsh, Scottish and Irish - the hinder part of the head, the occiput, projects prominently backwards behind the line of the neck; the British head is long in comparison with its width" (p. 720).

Keith then pointed out that "in the vast majority of Germans, the back of the head is 'flattened'-- indicating a profound racial difference. Even in the sixteenth century, Vesalius, who is universally recognized as the 'father of Anatomy,' regarded the flat occiput as a German characteristic.... He came, rather unwillingly, to the conclusion that the vast majority of modern German people differed from the British, Dutch, Dane and Scandinavian in head form.

"The explanation," according to Keith, "is easy. With the exodus of the Franks to France and the Anglo-Saxons to Britain in the fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth centuries of our era, Germany was almost denuded of her long-headed elements in her population."

So the land of Germany seems to have been operating as a massive SIEVE - while the round-headed population elements were retained, the long-headed elements passed through. This is rather astounding! Could something like this have happened by chance alone? Surely there was something more at work here!

Did any more of the Scandinavian long-headed type leave? Yes - to America! Look at the entry on 'Germany' in the Britannica:

"There have been great oscillations in the actual emigration by sea. It first exceeded 100,000 soon after the Franco-German War (1872, 126,000), and this occurred again in the years 1880 to 1892. Germany lost during these thirteen years more than 1,700,000 inhabitants by emigration. The total number of those who sailed for the United States from 1820 to 1900 may be estimated at more than 4,500,000....

"The greater number of the more recent emigrants [to the U.S.] was from the agricultural provinces of northern Germany - West Prussia, Posen, Pomerania, Mecklenburg, Schleswig-Holstein and Hanover, and sometimes the emigration reached 1% of the total population of these provinces. In subsequent years the emigration of native Germans greatly decreased" (11th ed., vol. 11).

What is so special about northern Germany? Notice this reference from Ripley's Races of Europe:

"Northwestern Germany - Hanover, Schleswig-Holstein, Westphalia - is distinctly allied to the physical type of the Swedes, Norwegians, and Danes. All the remainder of the Empire - no, not even excluding Prussia, east of the Elbe - is less Teutonic in type; until finally in the essentially Alpine broadheaded populations of Baden, Wurttemberg, and Bavaria in the south, the Teutonic race passes from view" (p. 214).

It is generally known that the northern "Low Germans" differ from the southern "High Germans". But there were differences even among the Low Germans. Another source comments:

"A separate study, in the case of Germany at least would seem to indicate that those [immigrants] who went to the U.S.A. in the 1800s were somehow different from those who stayed behind and German officials themselves remarked on such a difference.

"The claim for such a distinction is based on consideration of physical types, areas-of-origin within Germany, religious orientation and social outlook" (Yair Davidy, The Tribes, Russell-Davis Publishers, p. 430).

It seems America's Puritan founders were indeed right in believing that God was sifting a whole nation! It is clear, then, that the Anglo-Saxon peoples are not Germanic - at least in the modern sense of that term. Neither are the Teutonic peoples of Scandinavia and the rest of Northwest Europe who sprang from the Scythians.

These people who overran the British Isles were in many respects the same as the Celts who were already living there. Notice what Professor Huxley's Racial Origins says:

"The invasion of the Saxons, the Goths, the Danes and the Normans changed the language of Britain, but added no new physical element. Therefore we should not talk anymore of Celts and Saxons, for THEY ARE ALL ONE.

I never lose an opportunity of rooting up the false idea that the Celts and Saxons are different races."

Winston Churchill was of the same opinion (History of the English-Speaking Peoples, vol. 1, preface)" (America and Britain in Prophecy, p.32-34).

The Scottish Declaration of Independence, written in 1320 AD by King Robert the Bruce (who was popularized in the 1995 movie Braveheart) shows that the Scots of that time knew from whom and where they were descended from. It states:

"The nation of the Scots has been distinguished by many honours, which passing from greater Scythia through the Mediterranean Sea and through the Pillars of Hercules, and sojourning in Spain, amongst the most savage tribes through a long course of time, could nowhere be subjugated by any people, however barbarous, and coming thence 1200 years after the outgoings of THE PEOPLE OF ISRAEL they, by their many victories and infinite toil, acquired for themselves the possessions in the west which they now hold."



The Scottish Declaration of Independence

We have covered the history, in particular, of the descendants of the two sons of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, from whom the British and American peoples descended. Where did the rest of the tribes of Israel migrate to?

In **Genesis 49** there is recorded a long prophecy that describes the state of each of the tribes in the "latter days". More clues are given in a similar prophecy spoken by Moses in **Deuteronomy 33**. Since God gave us these days clues then it is logical that He would guide His people in the church to understand which peoples match these clues.

Jacob's firstborn son to his first wife, Leah, was **Reuben**. Because he slept with Jacob's concubine, Bilhah (**Genesis 35:22**), he lost the birthright which was passed onto Joseph, the firstborn son of his second and favorite wife, Rachel. Which nation is descended from Reuben? The clues of **Genesis 49** and the facts of history point to France. In Yair Davidy's book "The Tribes" he writes:

In west Europe the Franks were divided into several groups of whom the main ones are assumed to have been the Ripuarian Franks, the Salian Franks and the Chatti or Hessians. The Ripuarian Franks were assumedly so-called by the Romans since they were first known to them on the banks of the Rhine (in Latin "ripe" means river-bank) The name is also given as Ribauri and this name in Hebrew is another form of REUBEN ... [the] Ripuarian Franks with Alamans also entered Gaul from the east of the Rhine where they had been centred in Westphalia. The name "PHALIA" wherein the Franks had been sojourning is derived most likely from that of PHALUI, second son of Reuben (p 162-163)".

Jacob foretold that Reuben would be "unstable as water" (**Genesis 49:4**). This has been the case with the instability in French government since the French revolution, though it has been more stable in recent years. Just as Jacob's son, Reuben, had a weakness for sex, the French have been known for their "avant-garde" approach to sex. Jacob also referred to Reuben as "the excellency of dignity and the excellency of power" (**Genesis 49:3**). In the past, France was called "the queen of culture". This excellency can be seen in many of France's magnificent chateaus and palaces such as the Versailles. During the time of Napoleon, France also excelled in power.

The descendants of Reuben, at a subconscious level, have tried hard to take back the double-portion of the birthright blessings from Joseph. Just before the time that Ephraim and Manasseh would inherit the birthright the French controlled much of eastern Canada and the vast Mississippi Basin (Louisiana Territory). The French and Indian War (1754-1763) was a major turning point in the struggle for control of North America. The decisive battle was the British capture of the "impregnable" city of Quebec where the fighting was centered on the aptly named Plains of Abraham. Britain thereafter acquired the French territory of eastern Canada.

In 1803 Napoleon sold the vast Louisiana Territory (8.28 million acres of the world's richest and most fertile land) to the new nation of the United States in order to fund his war efforts to expand France's empire in Europe. This event is seen by some as a symbolic handing over of the birthright from Reuben to Joseph. Through the French support of the Americans in their War of Independence and the sale of the Louisiana Territory, France hoped to create a rival who would weaken England. They elevated one branch of the family of Joseph and then lost to the other branch on both sea and land when the British defeated them in the battles of Trafalgar and Waterloo.

The northern French (about a quarter of the French including much of the upper class) are descended from the Ripuarian Franks (Reuben). The central and much of the southern French and the Walloons of south Belgium (40% of Belgians) are probably descended from Dodanim (**Genesis 10:2-4**) who was a son of Javan, the ancestor of the Spanish through another of his other sons.

After Reuben came **Simeon** and **Levi**. These sons were quite cruel and Jacob foretold that they would be scattered by God throughout Israel (**Genesis 49:7**). According to Yair Davidy, Simeon appears to be represented by Celtic tribes such as the Simeni on the east coast of Britain and the Semoni of Ireland and Wales. Some also are to be found in Scandinavia (The Tribes, p 219-220).

The tribe of Levi, from whom came Moses and Aaron, became the priestly tribe. Being the priestly tribe they had no tribal inheritance. They lived amongst the other tribes. Amongst the Jews of Israel, Welsh and the United States we find many with names like Levi, Levy, Llewellyn and Lewis. The Hebrew word for priest is "Kohen". Many with names such as Kohan, Kuhn and Cohen are of Levite descent. Many of the tribe of Levi are found in Wales and amongst the Cornish people of SW England.

Judah or the Jewish people are quite visible to the world today, due mainly to the fact that they have remained faithful to keeping the sign of God's people, the Sabbath (**Exodus 31:16-17**). Jacob foretold that his "hand shall be on the neck of your enemies" (**Genesis 49:8**). The military skill of the Jewish people of the modern state of Israel in resisting the attacks of their Arab neighbors has been quite remarkable.

The Jews have always had a reputation for producing great intellects (eg. Einstein) as well as being skilful warriors. The Jews in the state of Israel and the Scottish (many of whom descend from Judah) have been known as great warriors and Scottish inventors have produced a great many inventions per capita than most nations. The Jews and Scots also share the common trait of being known for being shrewd financially.

THE EMBLEMS OF THE 12 TRIBES OF ISRAEL



In **Zephaniah 2:1-2** there appears to be a reference to the return of the Jewish people to the land of Palestine that we have seen in recent decades. Daniel's prophecy of an end time abomination of desolation (**Daniel 12:11**) requires an Israelite presence in Palestine in the end time. A significant number of Jews migrated into Europe with the other tribes. The Jutes gave the name of Jutland to the Danish peninsula. Many Jews can also be found in Denmark, Scotland, south England, Northern Ireland as well as the United States.

"**Zebulun** shall dwell by the haven of the sea. He shall become a haven for ships" (**Genesis 49:13**). This prophecy finds its fulfillment in the nation of Holland or the Netherlands. Rotterdam, at the mouth of the Rhine, is the world's busiest port. In the 17th Century, Holland was one of the great sea and colonial powers of Europe. Zebulun is also described as obtaining abundance and wealth from the seas and the hidden treasures of the sands (**Deuteronomy 33:19**). The Dutch are well-known for building dykes and reclaiming land for the use of farming. Much of the Afrikaan population of South Africa are of Dutch descent. South Africa is known for the great wealth obtained from their diamond mines and Holland for its diamond cutting industry. Yair Davidy writes:

The name ZEBULON was recalled in Zabulistan of east Iran (Afghanistan) and in the Sabalingoi which people were originally in southern Jutland and from there moved into Dutch Frisia and other parts of Holland (The Tribes, p.330).

Dan was described as "a serpent by the way" (**Genesis 49:17**) or a serpent's trail. They had a custom of naming places after their tribal ancestor Dan (**Joshua 19:47, Judges 18:11-12**). They left their mark on Europe as they migrated across it. We see this in the names of many of Europe's important rivers such as the Don, Dneiper, Dniester, Dardanelles and the Danube. Keating's History of Ireland traces the Tuatha de Danaan (literally "the tribe of Dan") from Greece to Ireland and Scandinavia. Both ScanDINavia and SweDEN bear the name of Dan. The name of Dan occurs

frequently in Ireland in place names such as Donegal, Danslaugh, Dungarvan, Dundalk, Dungloe, Dunsmore as well as the popular Irish song "Danny Boy".

Dan migrated to Ireland and, along with people descended from the Jutes (Judah), form the bulk of the nation of Denmark (DAN-mark). "Dan shall be a serpent by the way, a viper by the path, that bites the horse's heels, so that its rider shall fall backward" (**Genesis 49:17**). Jacob also said that Dan would be a judge over his own people (**Genesis 49:18**). Ireland has been like a serpent biting at the heels to England. Ireland achieved self-government from British rule via a terrorist campaign against representatives of the British government. A coiled snake is also the symbol of the Irish Republican Army (the I.R.A.).



Asher was to be characterised by qualities such as we see in Belgium today. "Bread from Asher shall be rich and he shall yield royal dainties" (**Genesis 49:20**). Belgium has been long recognised for her cakes and pastries as well as her lace, porcelain and tapestries which have graced the halls of kings. Both Belgium and Luxembourg are especially blessed above many of the other nations of NW Europe with a high standard of living. "Let Asher be blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil" (**Deuteronomy 33:24**). Oil was a symbol of prosperity. The northern Belgians (60% of Belgium) who speak Flemish (dialect of Dutch) are of Israelite stock and have prospered more than the Walloons of the south.

Gad is a Hebrew word meaning "troop" which is a good description of Switzerland where every man is mobilized for defense. The French speaking Swiss (descended from the Burgundians) appear to be descended from the tribe of Gad. "Blessed is he who enlarges Gad" (**Deuteronomy. 33:20**). The Swiss nation, per capita, is the richest nation in Europe.

Jacob also said that "a troop shall tramp upon him: but he shall triumph at last" (**Genesis 49:19**). The Swiss broke away from the Holy Roman Empire around 1300 and have retained their independence for most of the time since. "He provided the first part for himself, because a lawgiver's portion was reserved there. He came with the heads of the people" (**Deuteronomy 49:21**). To Gad come "the heads of the peoples". Geneva has been known as a place where heads of government meet for peace talks.

The identities of Isaachar, Naphtali and Benjamin are a little more obscure. **Isaachar** appears to be the western Finns. (The eastern Finns, as well as the Finnish language, are related to the Estonians and Hungarians) "Issachar is a strong ass couching down between two burdens. [He] bowed his shoulder to bear, and became a servant unto tribute" (**Genesis 49:14-15, KJV**). Finland has long been caught between the stronger, competing nations of Sweden and Russia and for some of the past century was under tribute to both Russia and Germany.

Naphtali appears to be Sweden who descend from the Suiones. The Amplified Bible renders **Genesis 49:21** as "Naphtali is a hind let loose which yields lovely fawns". Sweden is known for its sexually open lifestyle and blond, Swedish women have had a reputation for their great beauty. Naphtali also "gives goodly words" (**Genesis 49:21, KJV**). From Sweden come the Nobel prizes.

"**Benjamin** is a ravenous wolf. In the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night he shall divide the spoil" (**Genesis 49:27**). This is a very good description of the Vikings who pillaged Northern Europe. The Vikings came mostly from Norway who, along with the Danes, make up most of the population of Iceland. Just as Benjamin was the smallest tribe, so too, are the Norwegians amongst the other Israelite nations of Northwest Europe.

The Birthright Promised to the Sons of Joseph

As part of the birthright promises that Jacob passed on to Joseph and his sons was the promise that Manasseh would become a great nation and that Ephraim would become a multitude of nations - "He [Manasseh] also shall be great, but truly his younger brother [Ephraim] shall be greater than he is, and his seed shall become a **multitude of nations**" (**Genesis 48:19**). In **Genesis 49:22** we read the following about the descendants of Joseph in the "latter days": "Joseph is a fruitful son, a fruitful son by a well, **whose branches run over the wall.**"

This growth into a multitude of nations implies owning lands beyond the confines of the land deeded to Israel in the Middle East.

To understand more about the birthright promises that were passed from Abraham to Isaac to Jacob and to Joseph I would like to quote at length from the United Church of God booklet "The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy":

God's grand purpose - anciently, today and tomorrow - for Abraham's descendants has never varied. He selected them to be a blessing to "all the families of the earth" (Genesis 12:3).

To make this possible He promised them every material advantage they would ever need. These material blessings would make it possible for them to help and benefit many other nations all around the world...

Our story begins with a series of remarkable promises God gave to a man named Abram thousands of years ago.

"Leave your country, your people and your father's household and go to the land I will show you," God told Abram. "I will make you into a great nation and I will bless you; I will make your

name great, and you will be a blessing. I will bless those who bless you, and whoever curses you I will curse; **and all peoples on earth will be blessed through you**” (**Genesis 12:1-3**, NIV)...With these promises God set in motion an awesome design destined to benefit “all the families of the earth” when they are fulfilled...

God initiated a new phase in His plan to lead all nations to worship Him. He decided to select one faithful man and develop his descendants into a group of influential nations chosen for the explicit purpose of teaching and illustrating His values and way of life.

A part of that plan involves God’s desire that all nations recognize the stark difference between these two conflicting ways of life. He wants every person to learn that His ways alone can consistently bring true and lasting blessings to all people...The most important blessing ever to be made available to all nations through Abraham’s “seed,” we later learn from the apostles, is the blessing of eternal life through Jesus Christ (**Acts 3:25-26; Galatians 3:7-8, 16, 29**).

It needs to be noted here that Jesus came from the tribe of Judah who had the scepter "blessing" of rulership (Genesis 49:10) over the tribes of Israel. The birthright did not go to Judah, the tribe into which Jesus was born, but went to Joseph.

The remarkable promises that were a part of the birthright did not include the Messiah through whom salvation from our sins and eternal life would come.

This is made plain in 1 Chronicles 5:2 where we read: “For Judah prevailed among his brothers, and from him came the chief ruler, but the birthright was Joseph’s.”

Continuing on now from “The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy”:

The Bible reveals many aspects of God’s master plan for the salvation of mankind. The spiritual dimension of His promise to Abraham is only one part of the story. As physical beings we function in a physical world. Therefore God often achieves His spiritual goals through physical means such as giving or taking away physical blessings—using the principle of rewards for good behavior and punishment for sin. For example, we need to consider why God promised to make of Abraham a “great nation” (**Genesis 12:2**)...

As Abraham further demonstrated his faithfulness, God expanded the scope of His promises to him. Ultimately they involved far more than He had originally revealed. The most detailed accounting of God’s astounding promises to Abraham appears in **Genesis 17**.

“When Abram was ninety-nine years old, the Lord appeared to Abram and said to him, ‘I am Almighty God; walk before Me and be blameless. And I will make My covenant between Me and you, and will multiply you exceedingly...As for Me, behold, My covenant is with you, and you shall be a father of many nations. No longer shall your name be called Abram, but your name shall be Abraham; for **I have made you a father of many nations**. I will make you exceedingly fruitful; and **I will make nations of you, and kings shall come from you**. And I will establish My covenant between Me and you and your descendants after you in their generations, for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and your descendants after you. **Also I give to you and your descendants after you the land in which you are a stranger, all the land of Canaan, as an everlasting possession; and I will be their God**’” (verses 1-8)...

Genesis 22 concludes with God restating the central elements of His commitment to Abraham: “Indeed I will greatly bless you, and **I will greatly multiply your seed as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is on the seashore; and your seed shall possess the gate of their enemies**” (verse 17, New American Standard Bible).

These physical, material and national blessings continue as clues to the identity of Abraham’s modern descendants...

The physical blessings passed down to Isaac normally would have gone to the firstborn son, Esau (**Genesis 25:21-26**). However, Jacob, the younger of twin brothers, persuaded Esau to sell his birthright to him for a meal of stew (**verse 29-34**)...

To attain the blessings of the birthright from his father, Jacob resorted to tricking the blind and aged Isaac into believing he was Esau (**Genesis 27:18-27**). Little did Jacob know that deceit was unnecessary. God had already revealed, even before the births of Jacob and Esau, that Jacob would be the stronger of the two and that Esau would, in the end, become subservient to Jacob (**Genesis 25:23**). But God allowed Jacob to receive the right-by-birth promise to be the family patriarch and to receive the best of the family inheritance from his father without intervening to change the circumstance. Later He would teach Jacob to cease trusting in his own deceitful devices.

Now notice the blessing Isaac pronounced on Jacob: **“Therefore may God give you of the dew of heaven, of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, and let your mother’s sons bow down to you. Cursed be everyone who curses you, and blessed be those who bless you!”** (**Genesis 27:28-29**). These were no idle words. Isaac was officially passing on to Jacob the awesome promises God made to Abraham.

Later, through a dream, God confirmed to Jacob that he indeed would receive the birthright promise.

God then revealed to Jacob that his descendants, numbering “as the dust of the earth,” would “spread abroad to the west and the east, to the north and the south” — in all directions from the Middle East (Genesis 28:12-14)...

This prophecy predicts the very geographical order in which Britain established her colonies around the world setting up her empire “upon which the sun never set”. They spread and settled to the west (America in 1607 and the West Indies), to the east (India in 1757), to the north (Canada in 1759) and to the south (Australia in 1788, New Zealand, South Africa and the South Pacific).

In **Genesis 35** we encounter another aspect of the birthright promise. Here God promised Jacob that **“a nation and a company of nations”** would proceed from him (**verse 11**). Knowledge of this aspect of Israel’s inheritance is essential if we are to understand key prophecies. The birthright promise would be fulfilled in two separate national entities.

In **Genesis 48** Jacob passed this part of God’s promise to Abraham and Isaac to Joseph’s sons, Ephraim and Manasseh. At the same time Jacob placed his own name on these two grandsons (**verse 16**). As a result, many later references to “Jacob” or “Israel” in the prophetic books of the Bible refer primarily to these two branches of Jacob’s descendants. Jacob’s blessing included land—national territory—that his two grandsons’ descendants would inherit “for an everlasting possession.” They also would grow into “a multitude of people” (**verse 4**).

Here, for a second time, we see the remarkable promise that Jacob’s descendants—specifically those who would spring from Ephraim and Manasseh—would grow into “a multitude of nations” and a single great nation, respectively (verse 19)...

The birthright promise of physical, material and national greatness went not to Judah but to Joseph, bypassing the firstborn son, Reuben. Notice the circumstances that routed this great promise into Joseph’s hands:

“[Reuben] was indeed the firstborn, but because he defiled his father’s bed, his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel, so that the genealogy is not listed according to the birthright; yet Judah prevailed over his brothers, and from him came a ruler, although the birthright was Joseph’s” (1 Chronicles 5:1-2).

With the birthright promise, Joseph's descendants—Ephraim and Manasseh—were to receive the blessings of wealth, power and national prominence.

Perhaps the most revealing of the biblical passages about the birthright promise, however, is in **Genesis 49**. Here we find Jacob blessing and prophesying about each of his sons' descendants "in the last days" (**verse 1**). Notice that the blessings Jacob pronounces on the descendants of Joseph for the last days are monumental.

"Joseph is like a grapevine that produces much fruit, a healthy vine watered by a spring, whose branches grow over the wall. Archers attack him violently and shoot at him angrily, but he aims his bow well. His arms are made strong. He gets his power from the Mighty God of Jacob and his strength from the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel. Your father's God helps you. God Almighty blesses you. He blesses you with rain from above, with water from springs below, with many babies born to your wives, and many young ones born to your animals. The blessings of your father are greater than the blessings of the oldest mountains, greater than the good things of the long-lasting hills. May these blessings rest on the head of Joseph..." (**Genesis 49:22-26**, New Century Version).

This prophetic passage tells us that Joseph's descendants "in the last days" will live in a productive, well-watered and fruitful land. They will be a people who have greatly expanded their territory and influence—politically, militarily, economically and culturally—a people "whose branches grow over the wall," or beyond their natural borders.

They will be a people that, on occasion, will be attacked by other nations but will generally be victorious. Their triumphs will sometimes seem "miraculous" or "providential" because the Almighty God is their helper and source of blessings. They will be a people who live in an unusually favorable climate that easily supports their steadily expanding population.

They will enjoy the blessing of good crops, vast herds of livestock and extensive natural resources such as fine stands of timber and valuable minerals mined from their soil. In other words, we can expect them to possess the choice blessings and resources of the earth. All of these blessings are to be theirs "in the last days" (**Genesis 49:1**)...



God promised Joseph's descendants 'in the last days' would live in a productive, well-watered and fruitful land.

In the nearly 3,700 years since God gave these promises, few nations can lay claim to blessings anywhere near these. Even fewer can claim the kind of economic stature and national prominence—even superpower status — promised to Joseph's sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, "in the last days."

Two candidates, however, perfectly meet the exacting criteria of these prophecies: the United States of America and the British Commonwealth of nations...

Joseph's modern descendants are the easiest to identify of all the lost tribes of Israel because the specific blessings they were to receive stand out so distinctly from those of the other tribes. God promised to Joseph's descendants—through his sons Ephraim and Manasseh —all the benefits of the birthright promises of national greatness and overflowing prosperity.

Before his death Moses repeated the special blessings that would flow to Joseph's descendants. "And of Joseph he said: 'Blessed of the Lord is his land, with the precious things of heaven, with the dew, and the deep lying beneath, with the precious fruits of the sun, with the precious produce of the months, with the best things of the ancient mountains, with the precious things of the everlasting hills, with the precious things of the earth and its fullness, and the favor of Him who dwelt in the bush.

"Let the blessing come 'on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him who was separate from his brothers. 'His glory is like a firstborn bull, and his horns [military might] like the horns of the wild ox; together with them he shall push the peoples to the ends of the earth; they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh'" (**Deuteronomy 33:13-17**).

God had promised to take a direct hand in delivering magnificent physical blessings to Joseph's descendants. When we understand that the modern descendants of Joseph are the people of the United States and Britain, we see that over the past three centuries God has been true to His promises.

He has granted the physical birthright blessings of Joseph's sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, to their modern descendants—the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic people of Britain and the United States. The Anglo-Saxon and Celtic descendants have been the primary founders and shapers of British and American culture.

God also has made available to them opportunities to shine as spiritual beacons within a confused and darkened world...Even though God gave Abraham's descendants national prominence and prosperity as He had promised, He did not do so at the expense of other peoples and nations. Rather, God's far-reaching purpose has always been to lead all people into a permanent relationship with Him (**Acts 17:30; 1 Timothy 2:4; 2 Peter 3:9**). Only then can they receive the power to change their human nature and receive the ultimate blessing of eternal life (**Acts 4:12**)...

No single book has affected the history of the English-speaking people like the King James Bible. The Bible has since been translated into thousands of languages, virtually every tongue, with the British-descended people printing and distributing hundreds of millions of copies all over the globe...

They have provided the climate of religious freedom, the financial resources and most of the laborers that were needed to disseminate biblical knowledge to all nations. Biblical principles even became the basis for much of English common law. English common law in turn heavily influenced American constitutional and regional law. In this manner the Bible has had a greater influence on the United States and the British Commonwealth nations than on any other people in recent centuries...

The 1800s were certainly Britain's century. To their own astonishment the people of the relatively tiny British Isles found themselves ruling over a mighty empire.

As the 19th century drew to a close, the British Empire was "the largest empire in the history of the world, comprising nearly a quarter of the land mass of the earth, and a quarter of its population" (James Morris, *Pax Britannica: The Climax of an Empire*, 1968, p. 21).

Yet the empire would continue to expand. "It continued to grow until 1933, when its area was 13.9 million square miles and its population 493 million...The Roman Empire in its prime comprised perhaps 120 million people in an area of 2 1/2 million square miles..." (ibid., pp. 27, 42).

The British Empire, then, spanned 5 1/2 times the territory of the Roman Empire, with more than four times the subjects. British rule extended over not just ordinary regions but some of the choicest and most fertile territories on earth.

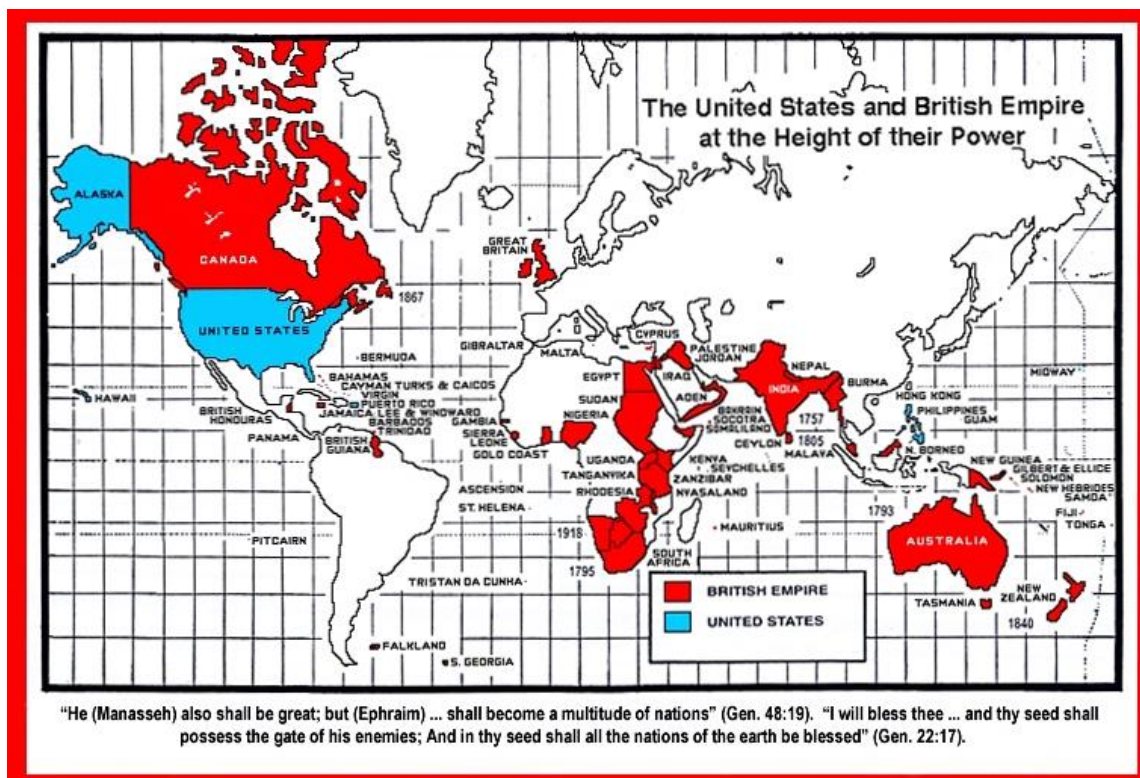
It is hardly surprising that educated people of the day perceived the hand of God in the process. To them it seemed too obvious to ignore. For example, Lord Rosebery, a British foreign secretary (1886, 1892-1894) and prime minister (1894-1895), spoke in November 1900 to the students of Glasgow University about the British Empire:

“How marvelous it all is! Built not by saints and angels, but by the work of men’s hands...and yet not wholly human, for the most heedless and the most cynical must see the finger of the Divine. Growing as trees grow, while others slept; fed by the faults of others as well as the character of our fathers; reaching with a ripple of a restless tide over tracts, and islands and continents, until our little Britain woke up to find herself the foster-mother of nations and the source of united empires. Do we not hail in this less the energy and fortune of a race than the supreme direction of the Almighty?”...

The builders of the British Empire aspired to weld together a peaceful, productive domain ruling over a quarter of the world’s population. A great achievement of British administrators was the establishment and extension of law and order in Britain’s colonial and imperial territories around the globe. This alone brought untold blessings to the people of these territories.

This Pax Britannica bequeathed peaceful conditions to many regions formerly plagued by war and long-term ethnic hostilities. The British presence also stimulated territorial economic development and introduced many areas to Western technological advances...

[In 1776] American colonists declared their independence. This separation of the United States from Britain accomplished the prophecy that Manasseh and Ephraim would be separate peoples—one a great nation and the other “a multitude of nations” (Genesis 48:16, 19)...



The wars between France and England that culminated with the British victory over Napoleon at Waterloo in 1815 had an indirect influence on America’s rise to greatness. Napoleon’s need for ready cash to pay for the costs of impending war with England led him to sell France’s vast American territories to the United States as the Louisiana Purchase.

The acquisition of the Louisiana territory in 1803 gave the American republic instant world-power status. The young country bought 828,000 square miles of the most fertile farmland in the world—the American Midwest—for less than 3 cents per acre! Overnight the size of the United States doubled, immeasurably strengthening the nation materially and strategically.

After that 1803 transaction the country expanded across the continent in less than a generation, adding huge swaths of territory with vast natural resources. In 1867 the United States added almost 600,000 more square miles when it purchased Alaska from Russia for \$7.2 million—about 2 cents per acre. Although no one realized it at the time, these great untapped blessings would allow America's citizens to lead the world in per-capita wealth in the next century. Though detractors openly ridiculed the purchase of Alaska at the time, income from its resources—timber, minerals, oil and the like—today amounts to tens of billions of dollars each year...

The Frenchman Alex de Tocqueville wrote the following in his *Democracy in America*:

The Indians [of North America] occupied but did not possess the land. It is by agriculture that man wins the soil, and the first inhabitants of North America lived by hunting...

Providence [God], when it placed them [the Indians] amid the riches of the New World, seems to have granted them a short lease only; they were there, in some sense, only waiting. Those coasts so well suited for trade and industry, those deep rivers, that inexhaustible valley of the Mississippi - in short, the whole continent - seemed the yet empty cradle of a GREAT NATION...

When the Creator handed the earth over to men, it was young and inexhaustible, but they were weak and ignorant; and by the time that they had learned to take advantage of the treasures it contained, they already covered its face, and soon they were having to fight for the right to an asylum where they could rest in freedom.

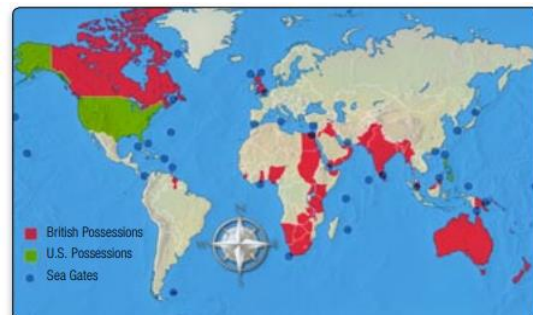
It was then that North America was discovered as if God had held it in reserve [for Israel's descendants] and it had only just arisen above the waters of the flood" (p.24, 258).

Returning now to the UCG booklet "The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy" we read:

The British and American peoples inherited a treasure trove of natural resources. What the British lacked within their own isles, they drew from an empire encircling the globe. Americans found everything necessary for national economic greatness—vast expanses of fertile soil; seemingly endless forests; gold, silver and other precious metals waiting to be mined; and massive iron ore, coal, petroleum and other mineral deposits—within the confines of the continental United States and even more in Alaska.

Both peoples possessed "the best things of the ancient mountains"—the "precious things of the everlasting hills" and "the precious things of the earth and its fullness" within the territories they exclusively controlled (Deuteronomy 8:9; 28:1, 6, 8, 13; 33:13-17).

God's promise to Abraham included another provision: "Your descendants shall possess the gate of their enemies" (Genesis 22:17). In this context gate means a strategic passageway controlling commerce or military access for a region.



A great nation and a multitude of nations: This ancient prophecy perfectly fits the United States and British Commonwealth. At the peak of their possessions, the British and American peoples controlled vast swaths of the world's most fertile farmlands and mineral-producing areas as well as strategic passages and ports controlling crucial military and trade routes.

Examples of strategic gates are the Straits of Gibraltar and the Suez and Panama canals.

It is a fact of history that Great Britain and the United States gained control of the majority of the world's most important land and sea gates. These have been critical to their economic and military dominance in the 19th and 20th centuries...

The British proved to be able administrators who dramatically improved the infrastructure and standard of living in the countries they governed. Although all aspects of their administration were not always carried out as justly and equitably as they should have been, God's prophesied intent was accomplished. The sons of Joseph led the world into an era of unprecedented knowledge, prosperity and technological advancement...

Although American military, economic, industrial and technical power still reigns supreme, the spiraling moral decay of the United States does not bode well for the future. The biblically based values on which the founding fathers and American people built the United States of America have given way to denial of God and the same kind of self-serving materialistic orientation that led to the collapse of the ancient kingdoms of Israel and Judah...

In fulfillment of His promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, God established Israel as a nation for the purpose of bringing blessings to other nations (**Deuteronomy 9:5; Genesis 12:3**). From their earliest days God expected the Israelites to be an example to the other nations around them of the divine blessings that would be poured out on all who worship and obey Him (**Deuteronomy 4:6; 14:2**).

If the Israelites would fulfill their part of their covenant agreement with God, God said He would make Israel the premier nation of the world (**Deuteronomy 26:19; 28:1, 12-13**). But if the Israelites disobeyed they would suffer the consequences (**Deuteronomy 28:15-68**). God told them other nations would take them captive (**verses 25, 32-33, 36**). Even their punishment was to be a lesson to other nations: "You shall become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword among all nations where the Lord will drive you" (**verse 37**).

The Israelites were supposed to be a model to other nations of the blessings of obedience and the penalties of disobedience to God's instruction. Regardless of the choices they have made, both anciently and today, this is still the role God has given them. And He holds them responsible for the way they respond to that role.

The European Age of Discovery and Colonialism

Let's now look at the colonisation of the many lands that the Europeans and, in particular, the English speaking peoples colonised and their relations with the native peoples that were dispossessed in the process in relation to where they got things right, where they didn't and who owns the lands that were predominantly settled by the Europeans and English speaking peoples.

As a prelude to that I would like to quote an article by Dinesh D'Souza that appeared in "The Chronicle Review" (May 10, 2002) entitled "Two Cheers for Colonialism". D'Souza is an Indian born immigrant to America and in this article he presents a well balanced view of the subject of colonialism:

Colonialism has gotten a bad name in recent decades. Anticolonialism was one of the dominant political currents of the 20th century, as dozens of European colonies in Asia and Africa became free. Today we are still living with the aftermath of colonialism. Apologists for terrorism, including Osama bin Laden, argue that terrorist acts are an understandable attempt on the part of subjugated non-Western peoples to lash out against their longtime Western oppressors. Activists at last year's World Conference on Racism, including the Rev. Jesse Jackson, have called on the West to pay reparations for slavery and colonialism to minorities and natives of the third world.

These justifications of violence, and calls for monetary compensation, rely on a large body of scholarship that has been produced in the Western academy. That scholarship, which goes by the name of anticolonial studies, postcolonial studies, or subaltern studies, is now an intellectual school in itself, and it exercises a powerful influence on the humanities and social sciences. Its leading Western scholars include Edward Said, Gayatri Spivak, Walter Rodney, and Samir Amin. Their arguments are supported by the ideas of third-world intellectuals like Wole Soyinka, Chinweizu, Ashis Nandy, and, perhaps most influential of all, Frantz Fanon.

The assault against colonialism and its legacy has many dimensions, but at its core it is a theory of oppression that relies on three premises:

First, colonialism and imperialism are distinctively Western evils that were inflicted on the non-Western world.

Second, as a consequence of colonialism, the West became rich and the colonies became impoverished; in short, the West succeeded at the expense of the colonies.

Third, the descendants of colonialism are worse off than they would be had colonialism never occurred.

In a widely used text, *How Europe Underdeveloped Africa*, the Marxist scholar Walter Rodney accuses European colonialism of "draining African wealth and making it impossible to develop more rapidly the resources of the continent." The African writer Chinweizu strikes a similar note in his influential book *The West and the Rest of Us*. He offers the following explanation for African poverty: "White hordes have sallied forth from their Western homelands to assault, loot, occupy, rule, and exploit the world. Even now the fury of their expansionist assault on the rest of us has not abated." In his classic work *The Wretched of the Earth*, Fanon writes, "European opulence has been founded on slavery. The well-being and progress of Europe have been built up with the sweat and the dead bodies of Negroes, Arabs, Indians, and the yellow races."

Those notions are pervasive and emotionally appealing. By suggesting that the West became dominant because it is oppressive, they provide an explanation for Western global dominance without encouraging white racial arrogance. They relieve the third world of blame for its wretchedness. Moreover, they imply politically egalitarian policy solutions: The West is in possession of the "stolen goods" of other cultures, and it has a moral and legal obligation to make some form of repayment. I was raised to believe in such things, and among most third-world intellectuals they are articles of faith. The only problem is that they are not true.

There is nothing uniquely Western about colonialism. My native country of India, for example, was ruled by the British for more than two centuries, and many of my fellow Indians are still smarting about that. What they often forget, however, is that before the British came, the Indians had been invaded and conquered by the Persians, the Afghans, Alexander the Great, the Mongols, the Arabs, and the Turks. Depending on how you count, the British were preceded by at least six colonial powers that invaded and occupied India since ancient times. Indeed, ancient India was itself settled by the Aryan people, who came from the north and subjugated the dark-skinned indigenous people.

Those who identify colonialism and empire only with the West either have no sense of history or have forgotten about the Egyptian empire, the Persian empire, the Macedonian empire, the Islamic empire, the Mongol empire, the Chinese empire, and the Aztec and Inca empires in the Americas. Shouldn't the Arabs be paying reparations for their destruction of the Byzantine and Persian empires? Come to think of it, shouldn't the Byzantine and Persian people be paying reparations to the descendants of the people they subjugated? And while we're at it, shouldn't the Muslims reimburse the Spaniards for their 700-year rule?

As the example of Islamic Spain suggests, the people of the West have participated in the game of conquest not only as the perpetrators, but also as the victims. Ancient Greece, for example, was conquered by Rome, and the Roman Empire itself was destroyed by invasions of Huns, Vandals, Lombards, and Visigoths from northern Europe. America, as we all know, was itself a colony of England before its war of independence; England, before that, had been subdued and

ruled by Normans from France. Those of us living today are taking on a large project if we are going to settle on a rule of social justice based on figuring out whose ancestors did what to whom.

The West did not become rich and powerful through colonial oppression. It makes no sense to claim that the West grew rich and strong by conquering other countries and taking their stuff. How did the West manage to do that? In the late Middle Ages, say 1500, the West was by no means the world's most affluent or most powerful civilization. Indeed, those of China and of the Arab-Islamic world exceeded the West in wealth, in knowledge, in exploration, in learning, and in military power. So how did the West gain so rapidly in economic, political, and military power that, by the 19th century, it was able to conquer virtually all of the other civilizations? That question demands to be answered, and the oppression theorists have never provided an adequate explanation.

Moreover, the West could not have reached its current stage of wealth and influence by stealing from other cultures, for the simple reason that there wasn't very much to take. "Oh yes there was," the retort often comes. "The Europeans stole the raw material to build their civilization. They took rubber from Malaya, cocoa from West Africa, and tea from India."

But as the economic historian P.T. Bauer points out, before British rule, there were no rubber trees in Malaya, no cocoa trees in West Africa, no tea in India. The British brought the rubber tree to Malaya from South America. They brought tea to India from China. And they taught the Africans to grow cocoa, a crop the native people had never heard of. None of this is to deny that when the colonialists could exploit native resources, they did. But that larceny cannot possibly account for the enormous gap in economic, political, and military power that opened up between the West and the rest of the world.

What, then, is the source of that power? The reason the West became so affluent and dominant in the modern era is that it invented three institutions: science, democracy, and capitalism. All those institutions are based on universal impulses and aspirations, but those aspirations were given a unique expression in Western civilization.

Consider science. It is based on a shared human trait: the desire to know. People in every culture have tried to learn about the world. Thus the Chinese recorded the eclipses, the Mayans developed a calendar, the Hindus discovered the number zero, and so on. But science -- which requires experiments, laboratories, induction, verification, and what one scholar has called "the invention of invention," the scientific method -- that is a Western institution. Similarly, tribal participation is universal, but democracy -- which involves free elections, peaceful transitions of power, and separation of powers -- is a Western idea. Finally, the impulse to trade is universal, and there is nothing Western about the use of money, but capitalism -- which requires property rights, contracts, courts to enforce them, limited-liability corporations, stock exchanges, patents, insurance, double-entry bookkeeping -- this ensemble of practices was developed in the West.

It is the dynamic interaction among these three Western institutions -- science, democracy, and capitalism -- that has produced the great wealth, strength, and success of Western civilization. An example of this interaction is technology, which arises out of the marriage between science and capitalism. Science provides the knowledge that leads to invention, and capitalism supplies the mechanism by which the invention is transmitted to the larger society, as well as the economic incentive for inventors to continue to make new things.

Now we can understand better why the West was able, between the 16th and 19th centuries, to subdue the rest of the world and bend it to its will. Indian elephants and Zulu spears were no match for British rifles and cannonballs.

Colonialism and imperialism are not the cause of the West's success; they are the result of that success. The wealth and power of European nations made them arrogant and stimulated their appetite for global conquest. Colonial possessions added to the prestige, and to a much lesser degree the wealth, of Europe. But the primary cause of Western affluence and power is internal - the institutions of science, democracy, and capitalism acting together. Consequently, it is simply wrong to maintain that the rest of

the world is poor because the West is rich, or that the West grew rich off stolen goods from Asia, Africa, and Latin America. The West created its own wealth, and still does.

The descendants of colonialism are better off than they would be if colonialism had never happened.



I would like to illustrate this point through a personal example. While I was a young boy, growing up in India, I noticed that my grandfather, who had lived under British colonialism, was instinctively and habitually anti-white. He wasn't just against the English; he was generally against white people. I realized that I did not share his anti-white animus. That puzzled me: Why did he and I feel so differently?

Only years later, after a great deal of reflection and a fair amount of study, did the answer finally hit me. The reason for our difference of perception was that colonialism had been pretty bad for him, but pretty good for me. Another way to put it was that colonialism had injured those who lived under it, but paradoxically it proved beneficial to their descendants. Much as it chagrins me to admit it -- and much as it will outrage many third-world intellectuals for me to say it -- my life would have been much worse had the British never ruled India.

How is that possible? Virtually everything that I am, what I do, and my deepest beliefs, all are the product of a worldview that was brought to India by colonialism. I am a writer, and I write in English. My ability to do this, and to reach a broad market, is entirely thanks to the British. My understanding of technology, which allows me, like so many Indians, to function successfully in the modern world, was largely the product of a Western education that came to India as a result of the British. So also my beliefs in freedom of expression, in self-government, in equality of rights under the law, and in the universal principle of human dignity -- they are all the products of Western civilization. I am not suggesting that it was the intention of the colonialists to give all those wonderful gifts to the Indians.

Colonialism was not based on philanthropy; it was a form of conquest and rule. The British came to India to govern, and they were not primarily interested in the development of the natives, whom they viewed as picturesque savages. It is impossible to measure, or overlook, the pain and humiliation that the British inflicted during their long period of occupation. Understandably, the Indians chafed under that yoke. Toward the end of the British reign in India, Mahatma Gandhi was asked, "What do you think of Western civilization?" He replied, "I think it would be a good idea."

Despite their suspect motives and bad behavior, however, the British needed a certain amount of infrastructure to effectively govern India. So they built roads, shipping docks, railway tracks, irrigation systems, and government buildings. Then they realized that they needed courts of law to adjudicate disputes that went beyond local systems of dispensing justice. And so the British legal system was introduced, with all its procedural novelties, like "innocent until proven guilty." The British also had to educate the Indians, in order to communicate with them and to train them to be civil servants in the empire. Thus Indian children were exposed to Shakespeare, Dickens, Hobbes, and Locke. In that way the Indians began to encounter words and ideas that were unmentioned in their ancestral culture: "liberty," "sovereignty," "rights," and so on.

That brings me to the greatest benefit that the British provided to the Indians: They taught them the language of freedom. Once again, it was not the objective of the colonial rulers to encourage rebellion. But by exposing Indians to the ideas of the West, they did. The Indian leaders were the product of Western civilization. Gandhi studied in England and South Africa; Nehru was a product of Harrow and Cambridge. That exposure was not entirely to the good; Nehru, for example, who became India's first prime minister after independence, was highly influenced by a socialism through the teachings of Harold Laski. The result was that India had a mismanaged socialist economy for a generation. But my broader point is that the champions of Indian independence acquired the principles, the language, and even the strategies of liberation from the civilization of their oppressors. This was true not just of India but also of other Asian and African countries that broke free of the European yoke.

My conclusion is that against their intentions, the colonialists brought things to India that have immeasurably enriched the lives of the descendants of colonialism. It is doubtful that non-Western countries would have acquired those good things by themselves.

It was the British who, applying a universal notion of human rights, in the early 19th century abolished the ancient Indian institution of suttee -- the custom of tossing widows on their husbands' funeral pyres. There is no reason to believe that the Indians, who had practiced suttee for centuries, would have reached such a conclusion on their own. Imagine an African or Indian king encountering the works of Locke or Madison and saying, "You know, I think those fellows have a good point. I should relinquish my power and let my people decide whether they want me or someone else to rule." Somehow, I don't see that as likely.

Colonialism was the transmission belt that brought to Asia, Africa, and South America the blessings of Western civilization. Many of those cultures continue to have serious problems of tyranny, tribal and religious conflict, poverty, and underdevelopment, but that is not due to an excess of Western influence; rather, it is due to the fact that those countries are insufficiently Westernized.

Sub-Saharan Africa, which is probably in the worst position, has been described by U.N. Secretary General Kofi Annan as "a cocktail of disasters." That is not because colonialism in Africa lasted so long, but because it lasted a mere half-century. It was too short a time to permit Western institutions to take firm root.

Consequently, after their independence, most African nations have retreated into a kind of tribal barbarism that can be remedied only with more Western influence, not less. Africa needs more Western capital, more technology, more rule of law, and more individual freedom.

The academy needs to shed its irrational prejudice against colonialism. By providing a more balanced perspective, scholars can help to show the foolishness of policies like reparations as well as justifications of terrorism that are based on anticolonial myths.

None of this is to say that colonialism by itself was a good thing, only that bad institutions sometimes produce good results. Colonialism, I freely acknowledge, was a harsh regime for those who lived under it. My grandfather would have a hard time giving even one cheer for colonialism. As for me, I cannot manage three, but I am quite willing to grant two. So here they are: two cheers for colonialism! Maybe you will now see why I am not going to be sending an invoice for reparations to Tony Blair.

As we have seen earlier, God had promised to the sons of Joseph, Ephraim (the British people) and Manasseh (the American people) the birthright promises of great national wealth, the gates of their enemies and that Ephraim would be a company or commonwealth of nations.

When God has a purpose, such as this promise of making Ephraim a commonwealth of nations, He will guide events to fulfill that purpose. As the peoples involved are free moral agents He will not override their choices so sometime God's promises are fulfilled through good choices made by the people involved and sometimes they are fulfilled through bad or disobedient choices or more often that not, they are fulfilled through a mix of good and bad choices by the people involved.

A case in scripture of this happening is the life of Samson. God had a purpose for Samson's life. God's purpose for him to begin to deliver Israel from the Philistines (**Judges 13:5**). Samson's life was full of many foolish choices. His life became an awful mess because of the immature childish way that Samson reacted to losing a bet and the misunderstanding that he created by walking away from his wife for a time which were problems that he created and took no ownership for. In addition to his lack of control with his sexual desires he showed no control over his selfish anger. He constantly reacted on his feelings and completely ignored how God would want him to act and treat others.

In spite of his sins Samson dealt a major blow, firstly to the Philistines' economy by destroying a good portion of their crops and secondly he dealt a blow to their manpower they would use for war by killing 1000 Philistines. He created a great big mess in his personal life which got even bigger after he allows himself to be betrayed by Delilah.

God finally withdrew His supernatural strength and the Philistines bound him with chains and put his eyes out. He lost his strength and became a blind slave grinding grain in a prison in Gaza. It is in this awful state that he finally is humbled and realises how foolishly that he has lived his life and he turned to God. God answered his last prayer and the whole house comes down and he dies with all the Philistines. Samson was willing to give up his life to fulfill God's purpose for him to begin to deliver Israel from the Philistines.

God saw to it that purpose was fulfilled even through Samson's many disobedient choices. Had Samson been obedient God's purpose would have been fulfilled in a much different way. Samson probably would have led Israel to subdue the Philistines and gain the secret of iron technology from the Philistines that gave them military superiority over Israel. These things finally happened a century later under king David.

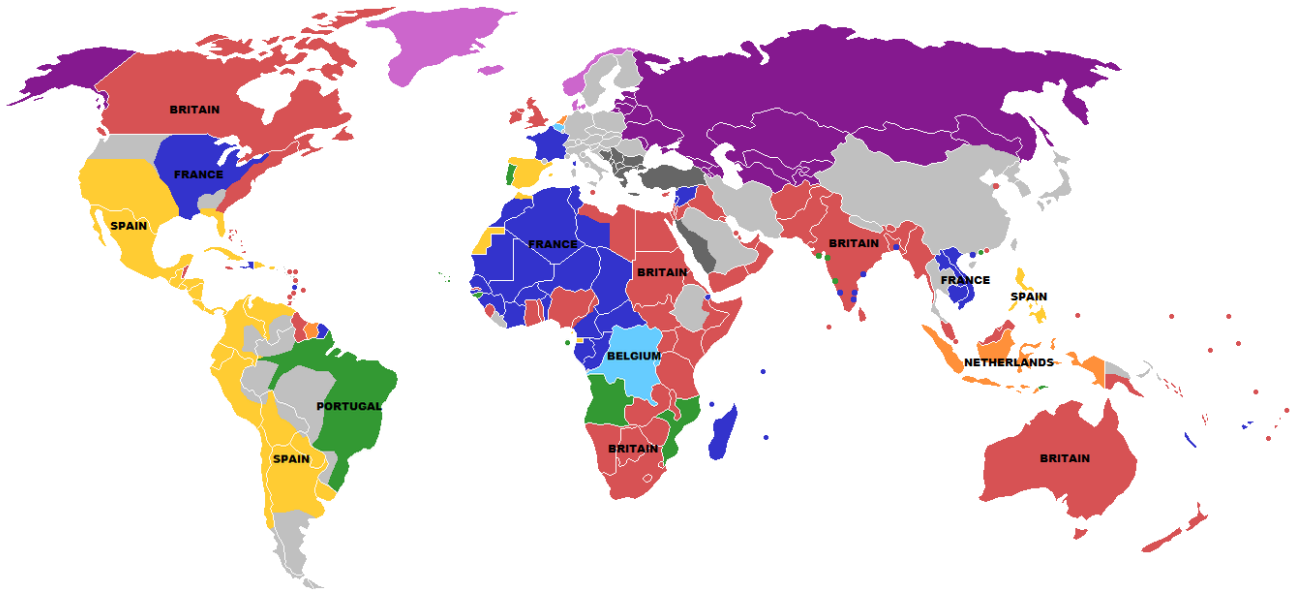
We have to bear this in mind as we look at the colonial history of European powers including the British Empire.

In **Acts 17:26** we read: "And He has made all nations of men of one blood to dwell on all the face of the earth, **ordaining fore-appointed seasons and boundaries of their dwelling.**"

National peoples have been ordained pre-appointed seasons and also boundaries of dwelling. The seasons probably refers to times of national greatness or empire as many different nations have had their season of greatness or empire.

Part of the reason for differing nations being given times of great empire was that each major nation will not be able to say: "Had we had a time of national greatness and empire we would have done things much better than others."

When each nation has a chance to be converted in the millennium and beyond most will have seen the consequences of living their own way both as a small and great nation and will not be able to boast that their way is better than God's way.



The European Age of Discovery and Colonisation was first launched by the Portuguese in the 1400's seeking spices and goods from the lands of the East (India, China and the lands and islands of South East Asia known as the East Indies). The following is a composite from various Wikipedia articles:

Spices were always considered the gold of the Indies. Cinnamon, ginger, cloves, pepper and turmeric had long been products which were difficult to obtain in Europe and brought in by caravans and experienced merchants coming from the East.

A merchant of Lisbon describes the overland spice route as follows: "Only the markets of Venice and Genoa then scattered these spices all over Europe, great in cost, and without guaranteed arrival." In 1453, with the capture of the city of Constantinople by the Ottomans, the trade of Venice and Genoa reduced to a great degree.

The advantage of the Portuguese to establish a sea route therefore virtually free of assault - however, covered in perils in the sea - showed itself rewarding and outlined a large income to the Crown in the future. Portugal would directly link the spice producing regions to their markets in Europe. (Wikipedia article - Portuguese discovery of the sea route to India)

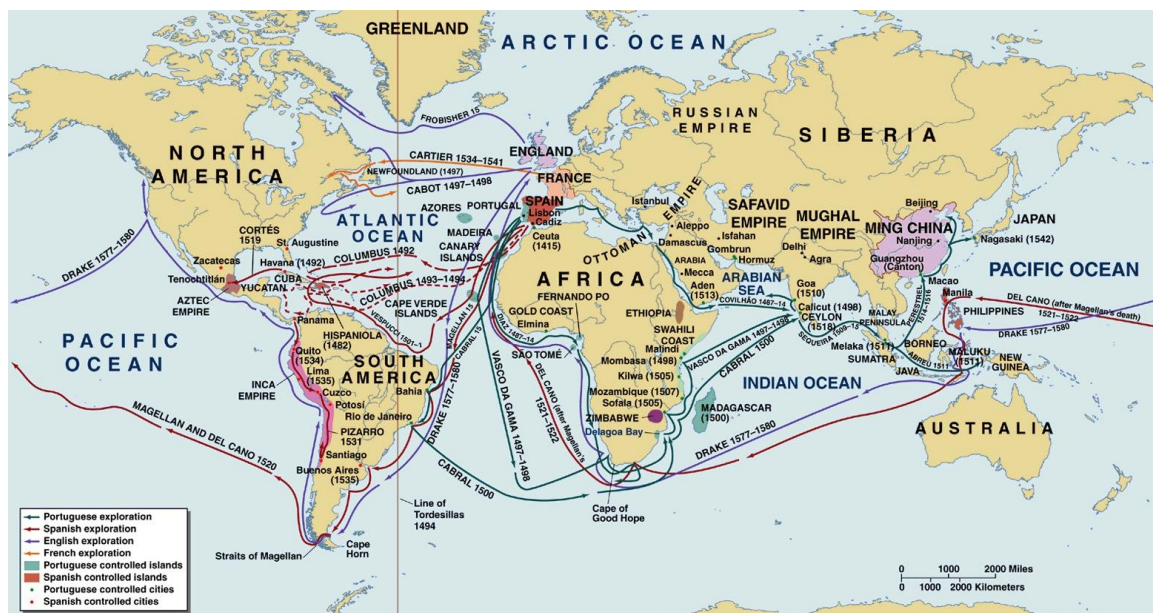
The Portuguese began systematically exploring the Atlantic coast of Africa from 1418, under the sponsorship of Prince Henry...In 1488 Bartolomeu Dias reached the Indian Ocean by this route. In 1492 the Catholic Monarchs of Castile and Aragon funded Christopher Columbus's plan to sail west to reach the Indies by crossing the Atlantic. He landed on a continent uncharted by Europeans and seen as a new world, the Americas. To prevent conflict between Portugal and Castile (the crown under which Columbus made the voyage), the Treaty of Tordesillas was

signed dividing the world into two regions of exploration, where each had exclusive rights to claim newly discovered lands.

In 1498, a Portuguese expedition commanded by Vasco da Gama reached India by sailing around Africa, opening up direct trade with Asia. While other exploratory fleets were sent from Portugal to northern North America, in the following years Portuguese India Armadas also extended this Eastern oceanic route, touching sometimes South America and by this way opening a circuit from the New World to Asia (starting in 1500, under the command of Pedro Álvares Cabral), and explored islands in the South Atlantic and Southern Indian Oceans.

Soon, the Portuguese sailed further eastward, to the valuable Spice Islands in 1512, landing in China one year later. In 1513, Spanish Vasco Núñez de Balboa crossed the Isthmus of Panama and reached the "other sea" from the New World. Thus, Europe first received news of the eastern and western Pacific within a one-year span around 1512.

East and west exploration overlapped in 1522, when a Castilian (Spanish) expedition, led by Portuguese navigator Ferdinand Magellan and later by Spanish Basque navigator Juan Sebastián Elcano, sailing westward, completed the first circumnavigation of the world, while Spanish conquistadors explored the interior of the Americas, and later, some of the South Pacific islands.



Since 1495, the French and English and, much later, the Dutch entered the race of exploration after learning of these exploits, defying the Iberian monopoly on maritime trade by searching for new routes, first to the western coasts of North and South America, through the first English and French expeditions (starting with the first expedition of John Cabot in 1497 to the north, in the service of England, followed by the French expeditions to South America and later to North America), and into the Pacific Ocean around South America, but eventually by following the Portuguese around Africa into the Indian Ocean; discovering Australia in 1606, New Zealand in 1642, and Hawaii in 1778. Meanwhile, from the 1580s to the 1640s, Russians explored and conquered almost the whole of Siberia, and Alaska in the 1730s...

European overseas exploration led to the rise of global trade and the European colonial empires, with the contact between the Old World (Europe, Asia and Africa) and the New World (the Americas and Australia) producing the Columbian Exchange; a wide transfer of plants, animals, food, human populations (including slaves), communicable diseases and culture between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres. This represented one of the most-significant global events concerning ecology, agriculture and culture in history. (**Wikipedia article - Age of Discovery**)

Although there had been previous trans-oceanic contact, large-scale European colonization of the Americas began with the first voyage of Christopher Columbus in 1492. The first Spanish settlement in the Americas was La Isabela in northern Hispaniola. This town was abandoned shortly after in favor of Santo Domingo de Guzmán, founded in 1496, the oldest American city of European foundation. This was the base from which the Spanish monarchy administered its new colonies and their expansion. On the continent, Panama City on the Pacific coast of Central America, founded on August 5, 1519, played an important role, being the base for the Spanish conquest of South America.



The spread of new diseases brought by Europeans and Africans killed many of the inhabitants of North America and South America with a general population crash of Native Americans occurring in the mid-16th century, often well ahead of European contact. European immigrants were often part of state-sponsored attempts to found colonies in the Americas. Migration continued as people moved to the Americas fleeing religious persecution or seeking economic opportunities. Millions of individuals were forcibly transported to the Americas as slaves, prisoners or indentured servants.

Decolonization of the Americas began with the American Revolution and the Haitian Revolution in the late 1700s. This was followed by numerous Latin American wars of independence in the early 1800s. Between 1811 and 1825, Paraguay, Argentina, Chile, Gran Colombia, the United Provinces of Central America, Mexico, Brazil, Peru, and Bolivia gained independence from Spain and Portugal in armed revolutions. After the Dominican Republic won independence from Haiti, it was re-annexed by Spain in 1861, but reclaimed its independence in 1865 at the conclusion of the Dominican Restoration War.



The last violent episode of decolonization was the Cuban War of Independence which became the Spanish–American War, which resulted in the independence of Cuba in 1898, and the transfer of sovereignty over Puerto Rico from Spain to the United States...The remaining European colonies in the Caribbean began to achieve peaceful independence well after World War II. (**Wikipedia article - Americas**)

Gilmartin explains these three waves of colonialism have been linked to capitalism. The first wave of European expansion involved exploring the world to find new revenue and perpetuating European feudalism.

The second wave focused on developing the mercantile capitalism system and the manufacturing industry in Europe. The last wave of European colonialism solidified all capitalistic endeavours by providing new markets and raw materials. (**Wikipedia article – European colonialism**)

Soon after the voyages of Christopher Columbus to the Americas, both Portuguese and Spanish ships began claiming territories in Central and South America. These colonies brought in gold, and other European powers, most specifically England, the Netherlands, and France, hoped to establish profitable colonies of their own. Imperial rivalries made the Caribbean a contested area during European wars for centuries...

During the first voyage of the explorer Christopher Columbus contact was made with the Lucayans in the Bahamas and the Taíno in Cuba and the northern coast of Hispaniola, and a few of the native people were taken back to Spain. Small amounts of gold were found in their personal ornaments and other objects such as masks and belts. The Spanish, who came seeking wealth, enslaved the native population and rapidly drove them to near-extinction. To supplement the Amerindian labor, the Spanish imported African slaves.

Although Spain claimed the entire Caribbean, they settled only the larger islands of Hispaniola (1493), Puerto Rico (1508), Jamaica (1509), Cuba (1511), and Trinidad (1530)...

The other European powers established a presence in the Caribbean after the Spanish Empire declined, partly due to the reduced native population of the area from European diseases. **(Wikipedia article – History of the Caribbean)**



In the late sixteenth century, French, English and Dutch merchants and privateers began their operations in the Caribbean Sea, attacking Spanish and Portuguese shipping and coastal areas [Looting the gold of the Spanish by pirates was state sponsored and these pirates became known as privateers until piracy was banned in the early 1600's as sugar took off as a major commercial product in the West Indies - RW].

They often took refuge and refitted their ships in the areas the Spanish could not conquer, including the islands of the Lesser Antilles, the northern coast of South America including the mouth of the Orinoco, and the Atlantic Coast of Central America.

In the Lesser Antilles they managed to establish a foothold following the colonization of St Kitts in 1624 and Barbados in 1626, and when the Sugar Revolution took off in the mid-seventeenth century, they brought in thousands of Africans to work the fields and mills as slave laborers. These Africans wrought a demographic revolution, replacing or joining with either the indigenous Caribs or the European settlers who were there as indentured servants.



The struggle between the northern Europeans and the Spanish spread southward in the mid to late seventeenth century, as English, Dutch, French and Spanish colonists, and in many cases their slaves from Africa first entered and then occupied the coast of The Guianas (which fell to the French, English and Dutch) and the Orinoco valley, which fell to the Spanish. The Dutch, allied with the Caribs of the Orinoco would eventually carry the struggles deep into South America, first along the Orinoco and then along the northern reaches of the Amazon...

From the 17th through the 19th century, the European colonial territories of the West Indies were the French West Indies, British West Indies, the Danish West Indies [the later United States Virgin Islands], the Netherlands Antilles (Dutch West Indies), and the Spanish West Indies...

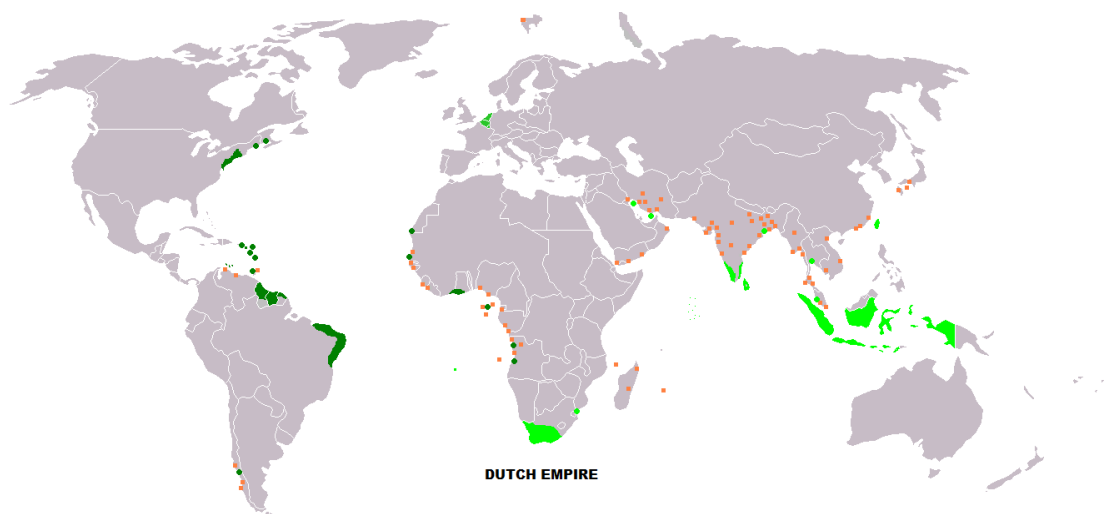
Between 1958 and 1962, the United Kingdom re-organised all their West Indies island territories (except the British Virgin Islands and the Bahamas) into the West Indies Federation. They hoped that the Federation would coalesce into a single, independent nation. However, the Federation had limited powers, numerous practical problems, and a lack of popular support; consequently, it was dissolved by the British in 1963, with nine provinces becoming independent sovereign states and four becoming British Overseas Territories. **(Wikipedia article – West Indies)**

The East Indies or the Indies are the lands of South and Southeast Asia...The name "Indies" is derived from the River Indus and is used to connote parts of Asia that came under Indian cultural influence.

Dutch-held colonies in the area were known for about 300 years as the Dutch East Indies before Indonesian independence, while Spanish-held colonies were known as the Spanish East Indies before the American conquest and later Philippine independence.



The East Indies may also include the former French-held Indochina, former British territories Brunei and Singapore and former Portuguese East Timor. It does not, however, include the former Dutch New Guinea western New Guinea (West Papua), which is geographically considered to be part of Melanesia. **(Wikipedia article – East Indies)**



The Atlantic slave trade or transatlantic slave trade involved the transportation by slave traders of enslaved African people, mainly from Africa to the Americas, and then their sale there. The slave trade used mainly the triangular trade route and its Middle Passage, and existed from the 16th to the 19th centuries. The vast majority of those who were enslaved and transported in the

transatlantic slave trade were Africans from central and western Africa, who had been sold by other West Africans to Western European slave traders (with a small number being captured directly by the slave traders in coastal raids), who brought them to the Americas. The South Atlantic and Caribbean economies especially were dependent on the supply of secure labour for the production of commodity crops, making goods and clothing to sell in Europe. This was crucial to those western European countries which, in the late 17th and 18th centuries, were vying with each other to create overseas empires...

Shipowners regarded the slaves as cargo to be transported to the Americas as quickly and cheaply as possible, there to be sold to work on coffee, tobacco, cocoa, sugar and cotton plantations, gold and silver mines, rice fields, construction industry, cutting timber for ships, in skilled labour, and as domestic servants. The first Africans imported to the English colonies were classified as "indentured servants", like workers coming from England, and also as "apprentices for life"...

The major Atlantic slave trading nations, ordered by trade volume, were: the Portuguese, the British, the French, the Spanish, and the Dutch Empires... Current estimates are that about 12 million Africans were shipped across the Atlantic, although the number purchased by the traders was considerably higher, as the passage had a high death rate. Near the beginning of the 19th century, various governments acted to ban the trade, although illegal smuggling still occurred. In the early 21st century, several governments issued apologies for the transatlantic slave trade.

Slavery was practiced in some parts of Africa, Europe, Asia and the Americas for many centuries before the beginning of the Atlantic slave trade. There is evidence that enslaved people from some parts of Africa were exported to states in Africa, Europe, and Asia prior to the European colonization of the Americas. The African slave trade provided a large number of slaves to Europeans and many more to Muslim countries.

The Atlantic slave trade was not the only slave trade from Africa, although it was the largest in volume and intensity. As Elikia M'bokolo wrote in *Le Monde diplomatique*:

"The African continent was bled of its human resources via all possible routes. Across the Sahara, through the Red Sea, from the Indian Ocean ports and across the Atlantic. At least ten centuries of slavery for the benefit of the Muslim countries (from the 9th to the 19th)...4 million enslaved people exported via the Red Sea, another 4 million through the Swahili ports of the Indian Ocean, perhaps as many as 9 million along the trans-Saharan caravan route, and 11 to 20 million (depending on the author) across the Atlantic Ocean."

According to John K. Thornton, Europeans usually bought enslaved people who were captured in endemic warfare between African states. Some Africans had made a business out of capturing Africans from neighboring ethnic groups or war captives and selling them.

Distribution of slaves (1519–1867)

Destination	Percentage
Portuguese America	38.5%
British America (minus North America)	18.4%
Spanish Empire	17.5%
French Americas	13.6%
British North America	6.45%
English Americas	3.25%
Dutch West Indies	2.0%
Danish West Indies	0.3%

The number of the Africans who arrived in each region is calculated from the total number of slaves imported, about 10,000,000. (**Wikipedia article – Atlantic Slave Trade**)

The discovery of the Americas in 1492 stimulated a steady stream of voluntary migration from Europe. About 200,000 Spaniards settled in their American colonies prior to 1600, a small

settlement compared to the 3 to 4 million Amerindians who lived in Spanish territory in the Americas.

Roughly one and a half million Europeans settled in the New World between 1500 and 1800 (see table). However, it was very small compared to emigration in the nineteenth and twentieth century, nevertheless the size movement in early modern populations is substantial.

During the 1500s Spain and Portugal sent a steady flow of government and church officials, members of the lesser nobility, people from the working classes and their families averaging roughly three-thousand people per year from a population of around eight million.

A total of around 437,000 left Spain in the 150-year period from 1500 to 1650 to Central, South America and the Caribbean Islands, while only 100,000 Portuguese settled mainly in Brazil, the emigration remained very small in the first two centuries between 1500 and 1700.

However, the development of the mining economy in the 18th century raised the wages and employment opportunities in the Portuguese colony and the emigration grew: in the 18th century alone, about 600,000 Portuguese settled in Brazil, a mass emigration given that Portugal had a population of only 2 million people...

From 1650 to 1800 almost 800,000 Spaniards emigrated to the New World especially by the Bourbon Dynasty in the 18th century...

In North America the immigration was dominated by British, Irish, French and other Northern Europeans...Emigration to New France laid at the origins of modern Canada with important early emigration of colonists from Northern France. **(Wikipedia article – European emigration)**

It was the Spanish and Portuguese that first colonised the Americas. The colony of New Spain at its height included all of South and Central America with the exception of Brazil which was colonised by the Portuguese.

The Caribbean islands were originally claimed by the Spanish but the Spanish only settled Cuba, the eastern half of Hispaniola (today's Dominican Republic) and Puerto Rica (lost to America in the Spanish American War).

The British captured Jamaica which became a part of the British empire and the remaining Caribbean islands were claimed by the British, French (who captured Haiti, the western part of Hispaniola) and the Dutch.

There are two main branches of the native peoples in the Americas. The vast majority descended from Tiras are the Native Americans or Amerindians. These are the Native Americans of subarctic Canada, USA, Mexico, Central and South America.

A second branch are the Arctic Native American peoples known as the Inuit (Eskimos) and the Aleut. This Arctic branch of Native Americans, also descended from the line of Japheth, are far more Asiatic / East Oriental in appearance than the Native Americans of the rest of the Americas. They are related to the Lapps of Arctic Scandinavia and Russia.

The Arctic Native Americans today now have a controlling interest in the new Arctic province of Nunavut (formed in 1999) that includes the Arctic Archipelago and the previous eastern half of the Northwest Territories.

This is fitting as they form a significantly high proportion of the population in a land that most white people do not wish to settle. It does have significant natural resources, particularly oil. It may well be that this is part of their land inheritance from God. The Arctic part of Eurasia similarly could also be a part of their land inheritance from God.

A look at the ethnic proportions of populations of the nations of Central and South America will give us a better idea of which lands were intended to be given to which peoples by God. The following statistics comes from Insight Guides World Encyclopedia.

In South America there are 3 countries with land that is mostly below 25° south of the equator – Chile, Argentina and Uruguay. The percentage of the population that is white from European ancestry in these countries are 64% in Chile, 90% in Argentina and 88% in Uruguay.

In Brazil a high proportion of the people live in the southern region where Rio De Janeiro and Sao Paulo are. This region is between 23 and 30° south of the equator parallel with northern Argentina with a more temperate climate than the part of Brazil that lies north of Rio.

Half of Brazil's population is of white European ancestry and the other half is a combination of mixed race, black and native Amerindian people.

As seen in the graphic to the right, north of Rio the proportion of the population of Brazil that is white is significantly lower than the population south from Rio.

In South America in the countries of Paraguay, Bolivia, Peru, Ecuador, Colombia, Venezuela and the three Guyanas as well as Mexico and the Central American countries of Guatemala, Belize, Honduras, El Salvador, Nicaragua and Panama, which all lie within 30° north or south of the equator, the proportion of people of white European ancestry is between less than 10% up to 25% with the vast majority of the population native Amerindian, mixed and black (descendants of slaves brought across from Africa).

The curious exception to this is the country of Costa Rica which lies between 11 and 8° north of the equator. Insight Guides World Encyclopedia says the following about Costa Rica:

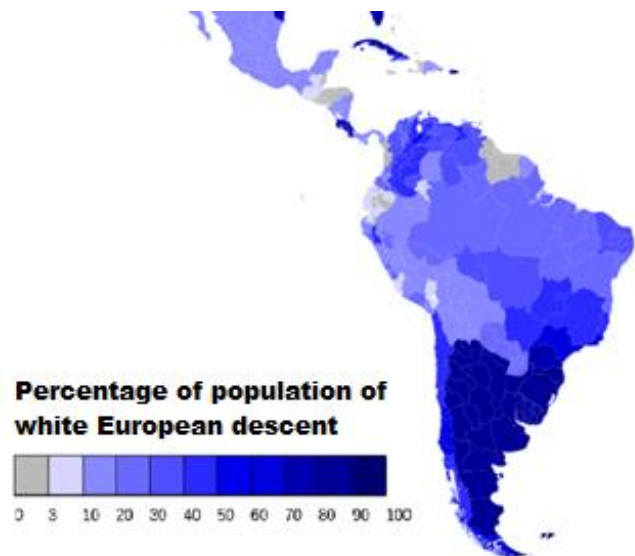
87% of Costa Ricans are white, 7% mestizo [mixed European-Amerindian], 3% black and mulatto [mixed European-Black], 2% Asian and 1% Native Americans. 89% of the population are Catholic, 8% Protestant...

Costa Rica maintains no standing army and the country is regarded as the most stable state in the region...

The country is one of the most wealthiest in Latin America...

Thanks to its stable political conditions Costa Rica has become a role model for governance in Central America. There is a good education and welfare system and the economy is booming.

What conclusions can we draw from this information in regards to our question of which lands God intended for which peoples?



Again we see the principle of the darker skinned Native American peoples being more drawn to the lands closer to the equator and those of white European ancestry being more drawn to the lands in the more temperate climate zones such as Chile, Argentina and Uruguay with the curious exception of Costa Rica.

It would appear that the land inheritance of the Native Americans descended from Tiras would be the part of the Americas that stretches from Mexico all the way down to close to the Tropic of Capricorn near Rio De Janeiro.

Argentina became a rich economy on the back of a major cattle breeding industry. In 1806 and 1807 the British twice attempted and failed to conquer Buenos Aires. While God had decreed many great temperate lands to the birthright tribe of Ephraim, this apparently did not include the temperate lands of South America, though Britain has held the Falkland Islands, a major sea gate in the South Atlantic.

It would appear that the temperate lands of South America such as Argentina, Chile and Uruguay and probably the southern part of Brazil are part of the land inheritance of the Latin peoples descended from Javan including the people of Tarshish (western branch).

What about that curious exception of Costa Rica which lies between 11 and 8° north of the equator? It is hard to tell. In this age before Jesus Christ sets up the Kingdom of God on earth that it may also be part of the land inheritance of the white Latin peoples in the midst of the other Central American nations to serve as a example to those other nations of how to make the most of western civilisation, governance and technology.

Just as difficult to figure out as Costa Rica are the many islands of the Caribbean. The name Caribbean comes from the Carib tribe that settled in the islands and also the northern coast of South America. The more dominant native Americans in the Caribbean were the Arawak people that included the tribes of the Taino and Lucayan that Christopher Columbus met on his voyages there. They were particularly decimated by European diseases and only a small remnant of the original native Americans exist in the Caribbean.



Today Cuba has a population that is a mixture of mostly white Latin and native American with a considerably high mixed race proportion and about a tenth are black. The Dominican Republic (the eastern part of Hispaniola) and Puerto Rico have a similar mix of population.

Haiti (the western part of Hispaniola), Jamaica, Bahamas and the islands of the Lesser Antilles all have prominently black populations descended from those brought over in the Transatlantic slave trade.

With the exception of the Bahamas which lies a little further north, all of the islands of the Caribbean lie between the Tropic of Cancer and 10° north of the equator.

Who's lands are these in God's eyes? One possible answer is maybe a split between the Amerindians and the descendants of the black Africans brought there originally as slaves with the Amerindians having Cuba, Hispaniola and Puerto Rico and the West Indian blacks the remainder of the Caribbean similar to the split in population we see today.

Another possibility for the millennium may be that all the Caribbean (potentially with more land created from the sea) may be deeded to all those in the Americas of African descent.

Let's now look at the development of the British Empire in the Americas. I quote now from Wikipedia's article on the British Empire:

The foundations of the British Empire were laid when England and Scotland were separate kingdoms. In 1496, King Henry VII of England, following the successes of Spain and Portugal in overseas exploration, commissioned John Cabot to lead a voyage to discover a route to Asia via the North Atlantic. Cabot sailed in 1497, five years after the European discovery of America, but he made landfall on the coast of Newfoundland, and, mistakenly believing (like Christopher Columbus) that he had reached Asia, there was no attempt to found a colony. Cabot led another voyage to the Americas the following year but nothing was ever heard of his ships again...

The subsequent Protestant Reformation turned England and Catholic Spain into implacable enemies...Elizabeth I gave her blessing to further privateering raids against Spanish ports in the Americas and shipping that was returning across the Atlantic, laden with treasure from the New World...France had begun to settle the Saint Lawrence River area, later to become New France.

In 1578, Elizabeth I granted a patent to Humphrey Gilbert for discovery and overseas exploration. That year, Gilbert sailed for the Caribbean with the intention of engaging in piracy and establishing a colony in North America, but the expedition was aborted before it had crossed the Atlantic.

In 1583, he embarked on a second attempt, on this occasion to the island of Newfoundland whose harbour he formally claimed for England, although no settlers were left behind. Gilbert did not survive the return journey to England, and was succeeded by his half-brother, Walter Raleigh, who was granted his own patent by Elizabeth in 1584.

Later that year [1584], Raleigh founded the Roanoke Colony on the coast of present-day North Carolina, but lack of supplies caused the colony to fail.

In 1603, James VI, King of Scots, ascended (as James I) to the English throne and in 1604 negotiated the Treaty of London, ending hostilities with Spain. Now at peace with its main rival, English attention shifted from preying on other nations' colonial infrastructures to the business of establishing its own overseas colonies.

The British Empire began to take shape during the early 17th century, with the English settlement of North America and the smaller islands of the Caribbean, and the establishment of joint-stock companies, most notably the East India Company, to administer colonies and overseas trade.

This period, until the loss of the Thirteen Colonies after the American War of Independence towards the end of the 18th century, has subsequently been referred to by some historians as the "First British Empire" [The 200 years exactly between 1583 (claiming Newfoundland) and 1783 (End of American War of Independence)].

The Caribbean initially provided England's most important and lucrative colonies, but not before several attempts at colonisation failed. An attempt to establish a colony in Guiana in 1604 lasted only two years, and failed in its main objective to find gold deposits. Colonies in St Lucia (1605) and Grenada (1609) also rapidly folded, but settlements were successfully established in St. Kitts (1624), Barbados (1627) and Nevis (1628).

The colonies soon adopted the system of sugar plantations successfully used by the Portuguese in Brazil, which depended on slave labour, and — at first — Dutch ships, to sell the slaves and buy the sugar. To ensure that the increasingly healthy profits of this trade remained in English hands, Parliament decreed in 1651 that only English ships would be able to ply their trade in English colonies. This led to hostilities with the United Dutch Provinces — a series of Anglo-Dutch Wars — which would eventually strengthen England's position in the Americas at the expense of the Dutch.

In 1655, England annexed the island of Jamaica from the Spanish, and in 1666 succeeded in colonising the Bahamas.

England's first permanent settlement in the Americas was founded in 1607 in Jamestown, led by Captain John Smith and managed by the Virginia Company. Bermuda was settled and claimed by England as a result of the 1609 shipwreck of the Virginia Company's flagship, and in 1615 was turned over to the newly formed Somers Isles Company. The Virginia Company's charter was revoked in 1624 and direct control of Virginia was assumed by the crown, thereby founding the Colony of Virginia. The London and Bristol Company was created in 1610 with the aim of creating a permanent settlement on Newfoundland, but was largely unsuccessful.

In 1620, Plymouth was founded as a haven for Puritan religious separatists, later known as the Pilgrims.

Fleeing from religious persecution would become the motive of many English would-be colonists to risk the arduous trans-Atlantic voyage: Maryland was founded as a haven for Roman Catholics (1634), Rhode Island (1636) as a colony tolerant of all religions and Connecticut (1639) for Congregationalists. The Province of Carolina was founded in 1663.



The *Mayflower*, which transported Pilgrims to the New World. During the first winter at Plymouth, about half of the Pilgrims died.

With the surrender of Fort Amsterdam in 1664, England gained control of the Dutch colony of New Netherland, renaming it New York. This was formalised in negotiations following the Second Anglo-Dutch War, in exchange for Suriname. In 1681, the colony of Pennsylvania was founded by William Penn.

The American colonies were less financially successful than those of the Caribbean, but had large areas of good agricultural land and attracted far larger numbers of English emigrants who preferred their temperate climates.

In 1670, Charles II incorporated by royal charter the Hudson's Bay Company (HBC), granting it a monopoly on the fur trade in the area known as Rupert's Land, which would later form a large proportion of the Dominion of Canada. Forts and trading posts established by the HBC were frequently the subject of attacks by the French, who had established their own fur trading colony in adjacent New France. Two years later, the Royal African Company was inaugurated, receiving from King Charles a monopoly of the trade to supply slaves to the British colonies of the Caribbean. From the outset, slavery was the basis of the British Empire in the West Indies.

Until the abolition of its slave trade in 1807, Britain was responsible for the transportation of 3.5 million African slaves to the Americas, a third of all slaves transported across the Atlantic. To facilitate this trade, forts were established on the coast of West Africa, such as James Island, Accra and Bunce Island.

In the British Caribbean, the percentage of the population of African descent rose from 25% in 1650 to around 80% in 1780, and in the Thirteen Colonies from 10% to 40% over the same period (the majority in the southern colonies). For the slave traders, the trade was extremely profitable, and became a major economic mainstay...

In 1695, the Parliament of Scotland granted a charter to the Company of Scotland, which established a settlement in 1698 on the Isthmus of Panama. Besieged by neighbouring Spanish colonists of New Granada, and afflicted by malaria, the colony was abandoned two years later. The Darien scheme was a financial disaster for Scotland — a quarter of Scottish capital was lost in the enterprise — and ended Scottish hopes of establishing its own overseas empire.



The episode also had major political consequences, persuading the governments of both England and Scotland of the merits of a union of countries, rather than just crowns. This occurred in 1707 with the Treaty of Union, establishing the Kingdom of Great Britain [This union which boosted the British Empire combining the best of England (Ephraim) and Scotland (descended mostly from Judah) is a small forerunner of the uniting of the two Houses of Israel in Ezekiel 37 - RW]...

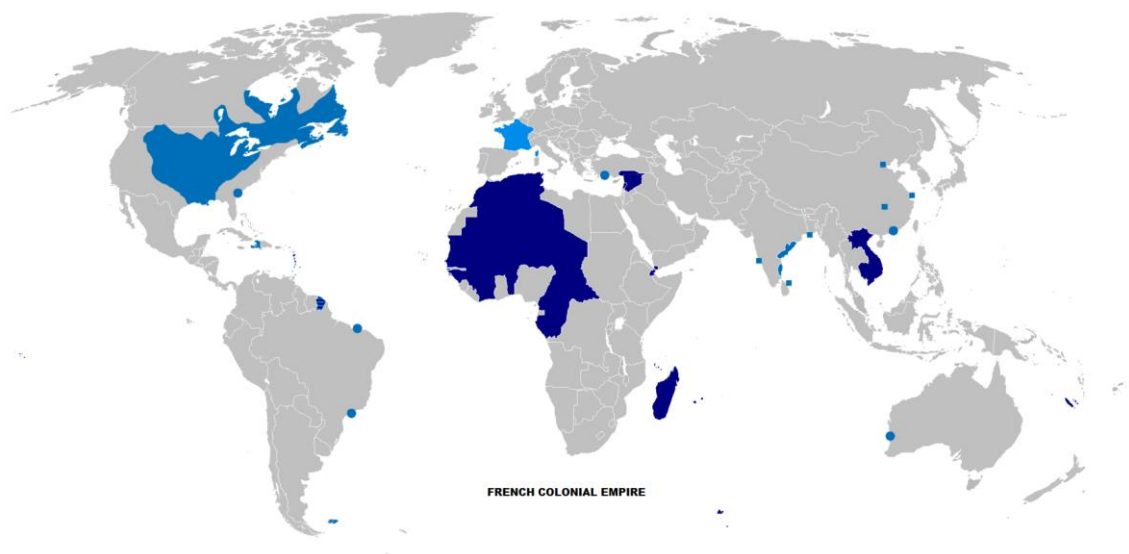
Peace between England and the Netherlands in 1688 meant that the two countries entered the Nine Years' War [1688-1697] as allies, but the conflict — waged in Europe and overseas between France, Spain and the Anglo-Dutch alliance — left the English a stronger colonial power than the Dutch, who were forced to devote a larger proportion of their military budget on the costly land war in Europe. The 18th century saw England (after 1707, Britain) rise to be the world's dominant colonial power, and France becoming its main rival on the imperial stage.

The death of Charles II of Spain in 1700 and his bequeathal of Spain and its colonial empire to Philippe of Anjou, a grandson of the King of France, raised the prospect of the unification of France, Spain and their respective colonies, an unacceptable state of affairs for England and the other powers of Europe. In 1701, England, Portugal and the Netherlands sided with the Holy Roman Empire against Spain and France in the War of the Spanish Succession, which lasted until 1714.

At the concluding Treaty of Utrecht, Philip renounced his and his descendants' right to the French throne and Spain lost its empire in Europe. The British Empire was territorially enlarged: from France, Britain gained Newfoundland and Acadia, and from Spain, Gibraltar and Menorca. Gibraltar became a critical naval base and allowed Britain to control the Atlantic entry and exit point to the Mediterranean...

The British and French struggles in India became but one theatre of the global Seven Years' War (1756–1763) involving France, Britain and the other major European powers. The signing of the Treaty of Paris (1763) had important consequences for the future of the British Empire.

In North America, France's future as a colonial power effectively ended with the recognition of British claims to Rupert's Land, and the ceding of New France to Britain (leaving a sizeable French-speaking population under British control) and Louisiana to Spain. Spain ceded Florida to Britain. Along with its victory over France in India, the Seven Years' War therefore left Britain as the world's most powerful maritime power.



During the 1760s and early 1770s, relations between the Thirteen Colonies and Britain became increasingly strained, primarily because of resentment of the British Parliament's attempts to govern and tax American colonists without their consent...

The American Revolution began with rejection of Parliamentary authority and moves towards self-government. In response, Britain sent troops to reimpose direct rule, leading to the outbreak of war in 1775. The following year, in 1776, the United States declared independence.

The entry of France into the war in 1778 tipped the military balance in the Americans' favour and after a decisive defeat at Yorktown in 1781, Britain began negotiating peace terms. American independence was acknowledged at the Peace of Paris in 1783.



Trumbull's Declaration of Independence

The loss of such a large portion of British America, at the time Britain's most populous overseas possession, is seen by some historians as the event defining the transition between the "first" and "second" empires, in which Britain shifted its attention away from the Americas to Asia, the Pacific and later Africa.

Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations*, published in 1776, had argued that colonies were redundant, and that free trade should replace the old mercantilist policies that had characterised the first period of colonial expansion, dating back to the protectionism of Spain and Portugal. The growth of trade between the newly independent United States and Britain after 1783 seemed to confirm Smith's view that political control was not necessary for economic success.

The war to the south influenced British policy in Canada, where between 40,000 and 100,000 defeated Loyalists had migrated from the new United States following independence. The 14,000 Loyalists who went to the Saint John and Saint Croix river valleys, then part of Nova Scotia, felt too far removed from the provincial government in Halifax, so London split off New Brunswick as a separate colony in 1784.

The Constitutional Act of 1791 created the provinces of Upper Canada (mainly English-speaking [the later province of Ontario]) and Lower Canada (mainly French-speaking [the later province of Quebec]) to defuse tensions between the French and British communities, and implemented governmental systems similar to those employed in Britain, with the intention of asserting imperial authority and not allowing the sort of popular control of government that was perceived to have led to the American Revolution.

Tensions between Britain and the United States escalated again during the Napoleonic Wars, as Britain tried to cut off American trade with France and boarded American ships to impress men into the Royal Navy.

The US declared war, the War of 1812, and invaded Canadian territory. In response Britain invaded the US, but the pre-war boundaries were reaffirmed by the 1814 Treaty of Ghent, ensuring Canada's future would be separate from that of the United States.

Since 1718, transportation to the American colonies had been a penalty for various offences in Britain, with approximately one thousand convicts transported per year across the Atlantic. Forced to find an alternative location after the loss of the Thirteen Colonies in 1783, the British government turned to the newly discovered lands of Australia...

The Australian colonies became profitable exporters of wool and gold, mainly because of gold rushes in the colony of Victoria, making its capital Melbourne for a time the richest city in the world and the second largest city (after London) in the British Empire...

The Napoleonic Wars were...ones in which Britain invested large amounts of capital and resources to win. French ports were blockaded by the Royal Navy, which won a decisive victory over a Franco-Spanish fleet at Trafalgar in 1805. Overseas colonies were attacked and

occupied, including those of the Netherlands, which was annexed by Napoleon in 1810. France was finally defeated by a coalition of European armies in 1815.

Britain was again the beneficiary of peace treaties: France ceded the Ionian Islands, Malta (which it had occupied in 1797 and 1798 respectively), Mauritius, Saint Lucia, and Tobago; Spain ceded Trinidad; the Netherlands Guyana, and the Cape Colony. Britain returned Guadeloupe, Martinique, French Guiana, and Réunion to France, and Java and Suriname to the Netherlands, while gaining control of Ceylon (1795–1815).

With the advent of the Industrial Revolution, goods produced by slavery became less important to the British economy. Added to this was the cost of suppressing regular slave rebellions. With support from the British abolitionist movement, Parliament enacted the Slave Trade Act in 1807, which abolished the slave trade in the empire. In 1808, Sierra Leone Colony and Protectorate was designated an official British colony for freed slaves...

The Slavery Abolition Act, passed the following year, abolished slavery in the British Empire on 1 August 1834... Under the Act, slaves were granted full emancipation after a period of four to six years of "apprenticeship". The British government compensated slave-owners.

Between 1815 and 1914, a period referred to as Britain's "imperial century" by some historians, around 10,000,000 square miles (26,000,000 km²) of territory and roughly 400 million people were added to the British Empire.

Victory over Napoleon left Britain without any serious international rival, other than Russia in Central Asia. Unchallenged at sea, Britain adopted the role of global policeman, a state of affairs later known as the Pax Britannica, and a foreign policy of "splendid isolation".

Alongside the formal control it exerted over its own colonies, Britain's dominant position in world trade meant that it effectively controlled the economies of many countries, such as China, Argentina and Siam, which has been described by some historians as an "Informal Empire".

British imperial strength was underpinned by the steamship and the telegraph, new technologies invented in the second half of the 19th century, allowing it to control and defend the empire. By 1902, the British Empire was linked together by a network of telegraph cables, called the All Red Line.

The East India Company drove the expansion of the British Empire in Asia...

Britain became the dominant power in the Indian subcontinent after the East India Company's conquest of Mughal Bengal at the Battle of Plassey in 1757...

The Company's army had first joined forces with the Royal Navy during the Seven Years' War, and the two continued to co-operate in arenas outside India: the eviction of the French from Egypt (1799), the capture of Java from the Netherlands (1811), the acquisition of Penang Island (1786), Singapore (1819) and Malacca (1824), and the defeat of Burma (1826).

Battle of Plassey



From its base in India, the Company had also been engaged in an increasingly profitable opium export trade to China since the 1730s. This trade, illegal since it was outlawed by the Qing dynasty in 1729, helped reverse the trade imbalances resulting from the British imports of tea, which saw large outflows of silver from Britain to China.

In 1839, the confiscation by the Chinese authorities at Canton of 20,000 chests of opium led Britain to attack China in the First Opium War, and resulted in the seizure by Britain of Hong Kong Island, at that time a minor settlement.

During the late 18th and early 19th centuries the British Crown began to assume an increasingly large role in the affairs of the Company. A series of Acts of Parliament were passed, including the Regulating Act of 1773, Pitt's India Act of 1784 and the Charter Act of 1813 which regulated the Company's affairs and established the sovereignty of the Crown over the territories that it had acquired.

The Company's eventual end was precipitated by the Indian Rebellion, a conflict that had begun with the mutiny of sepoys, Indian troops under British officers and discipline. The rebellion took six months to suppress, with heavy loss of life on both sides. The following year the British government dissolved the Company and assumed direct control over India through the Government of India Act 1858, establishing the British Raj, where an appointed governor-general administered India and Queen Victoria was crowned the Empress of India. India became the empire's most valuable possession, "the Jewel in the Crown", and was the most important source of Britain's strength.

A series of serious crop failures in the late 19th century led to widespread famines on the subcontinent in which it is estimated that over 15 million people died. The East India Company had failed to implement any coordinated policy to deal with the famines during its period of rule. Later, under direct British rule, commissions were set up after each famine to investigate the causes and implement new policies, which took until the early 1900s to have an effect...

The Dutch East India Company had founded the Cape Colony on the southern tip of Africa in 1652 as a way station for its ships travelling to and from its colonies in the East Indies. Britain formally acquired the colony, and its large Afrikaner (or Boer) population in 1806, having occupied it in 1795 to prevent its falling into French hands during the Flanders Campaign. British immigration began to rise after 1820, and pushed thousands of Boers, resentful of British rule, northwards to found their own—mostly short-lived—independent republics, during the Great Trek of the late 1830s and early 1840s.

In the process the Voortrekkers clashed repeatedly with the British, who had their own agenda with regard to colonial expansion in South Africa and to the various native African polities, including those of the Sotho and the Zulu nations.

Eventually the Boers established two republics which had a longer lifespan: the South African Republic or Transvaal Republic (1852–77; 1881–1902) and the Orange Free State (1854–1902). In 1902 Britain occupied both republics, concluding a treaty with the two Boer Republics following the Second Boer War (1899–1902).

In 1869 the Suez Canal opened under Napoleon III, linking the Mediterranean with the Indian Ocean. Initially the Canal was opposed by the British; but once opened, its strategic value was quickly recognised and became the "jugular vein of the Empire". In 1875, the Conservative government of Benjamin Disraeli bought the indebted Egyptian ruler Isma'il Pasha's 44% shareholding in the Suez Canal for £4 million (equivalent to £350 million in 2016).

Although this did not grant outright control of the strategic waterway, it did give Britain leverage. Joint Anglo-French financial control over Egypt ended in outright British occupation in 1882. The French were still majority shareholders and attempted to weaken the British position, but a compromise was reached with the 1888 Convention of Constantinople, which made the Canal officially neutral territory.

With competitive French, Belgian and Portuguese activity in the lower Congo River region undermining orderly colonisation of tropical Africa, the Berlin Conference of 1884–85 was held to regulate the competition between the European powers in what was called the "Scramble for Africa" by defining "effective occupation" as the criterion for international recognition of territorial claims. The scramble continued into the 1890s, and caused Britain to reconsider its decision in

1885 to withdraw from Sudan. A joint force of British and Egyptian troops defeated the Mahdist Army in 1896, and rebuffed an attempted French invasion at Fashoda in 1898. Sudan was nominally made an Anglo-Egyptian condominium, but a British colony in reality.

British gains in Southern and East Africa prompted Cecil Rhodes, pioneer of British expansion in Southern Africa, to urge a "Cape to Cairo" railway linking the strategically important Suez Canal to the mineral-rich south of the continent. During the 1880s and 1890s, Rhodes, with his privately owned British South Africa Company, occupied and annexed territories subsequently named after him, Rhodesia...

Under the terms of the concluding Treaty of Versailles signed in 1919 [at the end of World War 1], the empire reached its greatest extent with the addition of 1,800,000 square miles (4,700,000 km²) and 13 million new subjects.

The colonies of Germany and the Ottoman Empire were distributed to the Allied powers as League of Nations mandates. Britain gained control of Palestine, Transjordan, Iraq, parts of Cameroon and Togoland, and Tanganyika.

The Dominions themselves also acquired mandates of their own: the Union of South Africa gained South West Africa (modern-day Namibia), Australia gained New Guinea, and New Zealand Western Samoa. Nauru was made a combined mandate of Britain and the two Pacific Dominions...

Though Britain and the empire emerged victorious from the Second World War, the effects of the conflict were profound, both at home and abroad. Much of Europe, a continent that had dominated the world for several centuries, was in ruins, and host to the armies of the United States and the Soviet Union, who now held the balance of global power.

Britain was left essentially bankrupt, with insolvency only averted in 1946 after the negotiation of a \$US 4.33 billion loan from the United States, the last instalment of which was repaid in 2006.

At the same time, anti-colonial movements were on the rise in the colonies of European nations. The situation was complicated further by the increasing Cold War rivalry of the United States and the Soviet Union. In principle, both nations were opposed to European colonialism. In practice, however, American anti-communism prevailed over anti-imperialism, and therefore the United States supported the continued existence of the British Empire to keep Communist expansion in check.

The "wind of change" ultimately meant that the British Empire's days were numbered, and on the whole, Britain adopted a policy of peaceful disengagement from its colonies once stable, non-Communist governments were available to transfer power to.

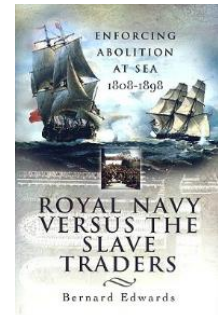
This was in contrast to other European powers such as France and Portugal, which waged costly and ultimately unsuccessful wars to keep their empires intact. Between 1945 and 1965, the number of people under British rule outside the UK itself fell from 700 million to five million, three million of whom were in Hong Kong.

These are many ways Britain and the United States have been a blessing to the nations of the world.

The British proved to be able administrators who dramatically improved the infrastructure and standard of living in the countries they governed. The British and American peoples (the descendants of Joseph) led the world into an era of unprecedented knowledge, prosperity and technological advancement.

The Bible, plus biblically oriented reference works and publications, began to be distributed globally, thanks to the English speaking nations who have shown great talent for administration and technical invention.

At times Britain received requests from different peoples in Africa and the Pacific to come under British rule. This was motivated by the kinder rule of the British compared to the more aggressive European powers and other native peoples as well as the opposition by the British to slavery.



The slave trade where new slaves were sold was abolished in 1807 with the British Navy policing it and then existing slaves were all freed in 1834. Many of these native peoples who asked Britain to annex them wanted to be protected from those who still continued the slave trade (often Muslim peoples).

In modern times both the United States and Britain have given many billions in foreign aid to other countries including rebuilding Europe and Japan after World War 2. And of course the English invented cricket which the Indians are forever grateful for.



There are some interesting similarities between the British Empire and the Kingdom of God. In his book "In Search of...The Origin of Nations" Craig M. White (p.413) presents the following similarities:

The British extended the rule of law and order wherever they went, similar to how the law will go forth from Zion around the world in the Kingdom (**Isaiah 2:1-4**).

The 19th century has been called the Pax Britannica – the British Peace. Similarly Christ is called the Prince of Peace (**Isaiah 9:6**) because His reign will bring world peace.

During the time of their empire the British developed technology and industry well ahead of the rest of the world. People came from around the world to admire British genius displayed at the Crystal Palace during Queen Victoria's reign over the Empire.

Similarly, nations will flow to Jerusalem (**Isaiah 2:2-4**) and be eager to learn from God's chosen people.

The British also took the Bible and many of its teachings and conservative morals throughout its empire. Queen Victoria herself said that 'the Bible is the secret to British greatness'. In God's coming Kingdom when Christ shall reign "the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD as the waters cover the sea (**Isaiah 11:9**).

Along with the positives there have also been great sins and injustices perpetuated by the descendants of Joseph because they have not fully obeyed the God who blessed them.

The British ramped up the hideous slave trade in the Caribbean and got rich off it in the 1700's before they abolished it in 1834, the first of the Western nations to do so.

The southern United States some 30 years after tenaciously out of economic greed held onto slavery and fought a bloody Civil War over it that cost more lives than any other war America has fought in.

The British fought China in the Opium wars supporting the British drug lords who were getting the Chinese hooked on heroin, a war fought out of economic greed.

It was the British who invented and promoted the theory of evolution. In modern times we have seen an explosion of sexual immorality, pornography and homosexuality as well as millions of abortions since it was legalised.

Only partially they have been the righteous model nations God had intended for them. They were still a physical, carnal people and the British and American peoples have made their fair share of mistakes. They could not ultimately achieve what only God will do through Jesus Christ when He returns to earth – bring total peace and prosperity to a world which so badly needs it!

The United States of America

The United States would ultimately become the “great” nation (**Genesis 48:19**) descended from Manasseh separate from the “company of nations” that would descend from Ephraim, the other son of the patriarch Joseph who received the birthright promises from God.

God would guide the people of Manasseh to a land He had in reserve for them to fulfill the birthright promises and prophecies about them becoming a great nation to model His way of life.

It is purely from the understanding of the birthright promises to the descendants of Joseph that the English-speaking British-descended people of America can draw any true claim to the lands of the United States from their Creator God.

This knowledge, of course, is disadvantageous to the Native Americans who originally populated the land that now forms the United States of America.

The Native Americans are related racially to the other Native Americans of Central and South America who do appear to have claim to all the lands from Mexico through to the northern half of South America. It would appear that the Native Americans of the USA are likely to have a share in that great area devoted to their race.

That said, there is always room for certain fair compromises. God's own allocation of lands for Ammon and Lot (neither of who descend from Abraham but from his nephew Lot) within the lands that God promised to Abraham's descendants sets an important precedent for dealing in a fair and a generous way with land allocations.

When Thomas Jefferson arranged the purchase of the Louisiana Purchase in 1803 he originally intended to make all of it apart from the important port of New Orleans a permanent Indian Territory. Certain concessions like this one may well have been acceptable in God's eyes had they been followed through on.

God would work circumstances out that would lead to His purpose of Manasseh receiving its share of the birthright lands He had promised but He would certainly have preferred that Manasseh acquire that land in a way where they acted honourably in their relations with the original inhabitants such as by peaceful and honored treaties and fair purchase.

The United States government, sadly, has a long history of going back on its word in a number of the many treaties it signed with the Native American tribes.

The descendants of Manasseh could obtain the land God had intended for them in an honourable way or they could do it their own way and gain it in a dishonourable way. How they have obtained it has been a mixture of the two given that men are a mixture of good and evil (as reflected in the Genesis tree of the knowledge of good and evil).

The Native American tribes have also acted in both a good and an evil way. In a lot of ways they have been peaceful and friendly at times such as seen in the way they helped the early Pilgrims. At other times some tribes have been particularly brutal with little or no provocation. The way some tribes would skin their victims was one particularly feared horror.

Below are a series of quotes from Wikipedia covering more on the early history of the United States:

Spanish explorers were the first Europeans with Christopher Columbus' second expedition, to reach Puerto Rico on November 19, 1493; others reached Florida in 1513. Spanish expeditions quickly reached the Appalachian Mountains, the Mississippi River, the Grand Canyon and the Great Plains. In 1540, Hernando de Soto undertook an extensive exploration of the Southeast.



In 1540, Francisco Vásquez de Coronado explored from Arizona to central Kansas. Small Spanish settlements eventually grew to become important cities, such as San Antonio, Texas; Albuquerque, New Mexico; Tucson, Arizona; Los Angeles, California; and San Francisco, California.



New Amsterdam in 1664 (looking approximately due north)

New Netherland was a 17th-century Dutch colony centered on present-day New York City and the Hudson River Valley; the Dutch traded furs with the Native Americans to the north. The colony served as a barrier to expansion from New England...

The colony, which was taken over by Britain in 1664, left an enduring legacy on American cultural and political life. This includes secular broad-mindedness and mercantile pragmatism in the city...

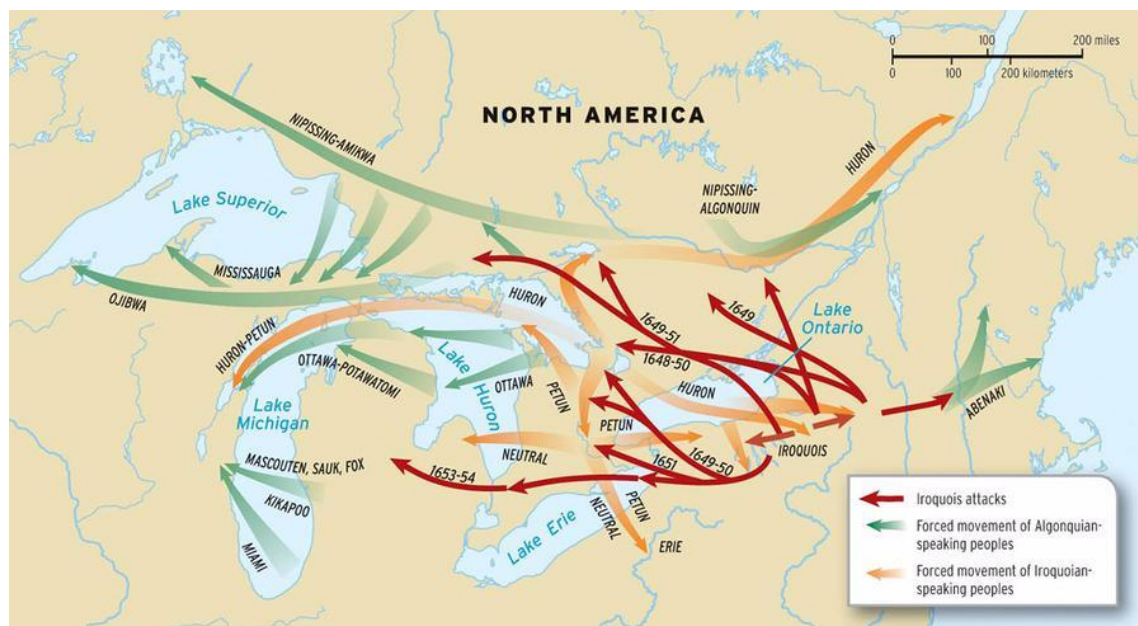
New France was the area colonized by France from 1534 to 1763. There were few permanent settlers outside Quebec and Acadia, but the French had far-reaching trading relationships with Native Americans throughout the Great Lakes and Midwest. French villages along the Mississippi and Illinois rivers were based in farming communities that served as a granary for Gulf Coast settlements. The French established plantations in Louisiana along with settling New Orleans, Mobile and Biloxi.

The Wabanaki Confederacy were military allies of New France through the four French and Indian Wars while the British colonies were allied with the Iroquois Confederacy. During the French and Indian War – the North American theater of the Seven Years' War – New England fought successfully against French Acadia.

The British removed Acadians from Acadia (Nova Scotia) and replaced them with New England Planters. Eventually, some Acadians resettled in Louisiana, where they developed a distinctive rural Cajun culture that still exists. They became American citizens in 1803 with the Louisiana Purchase (**Wikipedia article – History of the United States**)

The Iroquois League of Nations or "People of the Long House", based in present-day upstate and western New York, had a confederacy model from the mid-15th century.

Long-distance trading did not prevent warfare and displacement among the indigenous peoples, and their oral histories tell of numerous migrations to the historic territories where Europeans encountered them. The Iroquois invaded and attacked tribes in the Ohio River area of present-day Kentucky and claimed the hunting grounds. Historians have placed these events as occurring as early as the 13th century, or in the 17th century Beaver Wars.



Through warfare, the Iroquois drove several tribes to migrate west to what became known as their historically traditional lands west of the Mississippi River. Tribes originating in the Ohio Valley who moved west included the Osage, Kaw, Ponca and Omaha people.

By the mid-17th century, they had resettled in their historical lands in present-day Kansas, Nebraska, Arkansas and Oklahoma. The Osage warred with Caddo-speaking Native Americans, displacing them in turn by the mid-18th century and dominating their new historical territories...

The subsequent European colonists in North America often rationalized their expansion of empire with the assumption that they were saving a barbaric, pagan world by spreading Christian civilization.

In the Spanish colonization of the Americas, the policy of Indian Reductions resulted in the forced conversions to Catholicism of the indigenous people in northern Nueva España...

From the 16th through the 19th centuries, the population of Native Americans declined in the following ways: epidemic diseases brought from Europe; violence and warfare at the hands of European explorers and colonists, as well as between tribes; displacement from their lands; internal warfare, enslavement; and a high rate of intermarriage.

Most mainstream scholars believe that, among the various contributing factors, epidemic disease was the overwhelming cause of the population decline of the American natives because of their lack of immunity to new diseases brought from Europe...



While precise figures are difficult to determine, some historians estimate that at least 30% (and sometimes 50% to 70%) of some Native populations died after first contact due to Eurasian smallpox. One element of the Columbian exchange suggests explorers from the Christopher Columbus expedition contracted syphilis from indigenous peoples and carried it back to Europe, where it spread widely.

In 1618–1619, smallpox killed 90% of the Native Americans in the area of the Massachusetts Bay [shortly before the arrival of the Pilgrims in 1620 at Plymouth] ([Wikipedia article – History of Native Americans in the United States](#))

The strip of land along the eastern seacoast was settled primarily by English colonists in the 17th century along with much smaller numbers of Dutch and Swedes.

Colonial America was defined by a severe labor shortage that employed forms of unfree labor such as slavery and indentured servitude and by a British policy of benign neglect (salutary neglect). Over half of all European immigrants to Colonial America arrived as indentured servants.

The first successful English colony, Jamestown, was established in 1607 on the James River in Virginia. Jamestown languished for decades until a new wave of settlers arrived in the late 17th century and established commercial agriculture based on tobacco.

Between the late 1610s and the Revolution, the British shipped an estimated 50,000 to 120,000 convicts to their American colonies.

A severe instance of conflict was the 1622 Powhatan uprising in Virginia in which Native Americans killed hundreds of English settlers. The largest conflicts between Native Americans and English settlers in the 17th century were King Philip's War in New England and the Yamasee War in South Carolina.

New England was initially settled primarily by Puritans. The Pilgrims established a settlement in 1620 at Plymouth Colony, which was followed by the establishment of the Massachusetts Bay Colony in 1630. The Middle Colonies, consisting of the present-day states of New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, were characterized by a large degree of diversity. The first attempted English settlement south of Virginia was the Province of Carolina, with Georgia Colony – the last of the Thirteen Colonies – established in 1733.

The colonies were characterized by people primarily of the Judeo-Christian faiths, with many Congregationalists in New England, German and Dutch Reformed in the Middle Colonies, Catholics in Maryland, and Scots-Irish Presbyterians on the frontier...

Typically, a colony was ruled by a governor appointed from London who controlled the executive administration and relied upon a locally elected legislature to vote taxes and make laws. By the 18th century, the American colonies were growing very rapidly as a result of low death rates along with ample supplies of land and food.

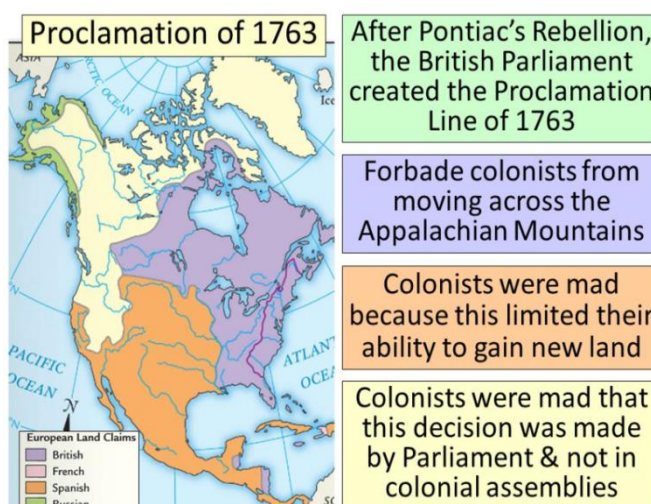
The colonies were richer than most parts of Britain, and attracted a steady flow of immigrants, especially teenagers who arrived as indentured servants.

The tobacco and rice plantations imported African slaves for labor from the British colonies in the West Indies, and by the 1770s African slaves comprised a fifth of the American population.

The question of independence from Britain did not arise as long as the colonies needed British military support against the French and Spanish powers. Those threats were gone by 1765. London regarded the American colonies as existing for the benefit of the mother country...

The French and Indian War (1754–63) was a watershed event in the political development of the colonies...the war effort resulted in greater political integration of the colonies, as reflected in the Albany Congress and symbolized by Benjamin Franklin's call for the colonies to "Join or Die"...

Following Britain's acquisition of French territory in North America, King George III issued the Royal Proclamation of 1763 with the goal of organizing the new North American empire and protecting the native Indians from colonial expansion into western lands beyond the Appalachian Mountains.



In ensuing years, strains developed in the relations between the colonists and the Crown. The British Parliament passed the Stamp Act of 1765, imposing a tax on the colonies without going through the colonial legislatures. The issue was drawn: did Parliament have this right to tax Americans who were not represented in it? Crying "No taxation without representation", the

colonists refused to pay the taxes as tensions escalated in the late 1760s and early 1770s (Wikipedia article – History of the United States).

The Seven Years and French and Indian Wars left Great Britain with a considerable debt and expensive responsibilities to administer newly acquired territory in North America.

As a result Britain felt the need to increase the share of taxes the colonists paid to help share the empire's defence costs. The matter of whether Britain or the local colonial assemblies had the right to collect taxes led to increased hostility and then a war for independence.

British Debt:

- The French & Indian War doubled the British national debt.

Results:

- Britain decided to tax the American colonies to help reduce the debt.
- British Parliament passed a series of taxes on products sold in the colonies.
- *Will be one of the main causes to the American Revolution.
- *British citizens paid 25 times more in taxes than American colonists.



The reason for these new taxes was to pay for the costs of the defence of the colonies after Britain spent an exorbitant amount of money on defeating France in North America.

The taxes were relatively light compared to the taxes paid by Britons by an amazing ratio of about 25 to 1. The colonists were never interested in representation in the British parliament. They simply wanted to retain their local governance without having taxes imposed on them from London without their consent.

Just like the secession of the ten tribes of Israel in Rehoboam's day, this breakaway from Britain by the American colonists was triggered off by the issue of taxation, a similarity that was not lost on John Wesley, founder of the Methodist church. He wrote to King George III and told him: "For God's sake, remember Rehoboam!"

Continuing on from Wikipedia:

The Boston Tea Party in 1773 was a direct action by activists in the town of Boston to protest against the new tax on tea.

Parliament quickly responded the next year with the Coercive Acts, stripping Massachusetts of its historic right of self-government and putting it under army rule, which sparked outrage and resistance in all thirteen colonies.

Patriot leaders from all 13 colonies convened the First Continental Congress to coordinate their resistance to the Coercive Acts.



An 1846 painting of the 1773 Boston Tea Party.

The Congress called for a boycott of British trade, published a list of rights and grievances, and petitioned the king for redress of those grievances. The appeal to the Crown had no effect, and so the Second Continental Congress was convened in 1775 to organize the defense of the colonies against the British Army...

They held very strongly a sense of "rights" that they felt the British were deliberately violating – rights that stressed local autonomy, fair dealing, and government by consent.

They were highly sensitive to the issue of tyranny, which they saw manifested in the arrival in Boston of the British Army to punish the Bostonians. This heightened their sense of violated rights, leading to rage and demands for revenge. They had faith that God was on their side.

The American Revolutionary War began at Concord and Lexington in April 1775 when the British tried to seize ammunition supplies and arrest the Patriot leaders...

The Thirteen Colonies began a rebellion against British rule in 1775 and proclaimed their independence in 1776 as the United States of America.

In the American Revolutionary War (1775–83) the Americans captured the British invasion army at Saratoga in 1777, secured the Northeast and encouraged the French to make a military alliance with the United States. France brought in Spain and the Netherlands, thus balancing the military and naval forces on each side as Britain had no allies...



Washington's surprise crossing of the Delaware River in Dec. 1776 was a major comeback after the loss of New York City; his army defeated the British in two battles and recaptured New Jersey.

As a battlefield tactician, [George] Washington was often outmaneuvered by his British counterparts. As a strategist, however, he had a better idea of how to win the war than they did. The British sent four invasion armies. Washington's strategy forced the first army out of Boston in 1776, and was responsible for the surrender of the second and third armies at Saratoga (1777) and Yorktown (1781). He limited the British control to New York City and a few places while keeping Patriot control of the great majority of the population (**Wikipedia article – History of Native Americans in the United States**).

The Louisiana Purchase was the acquisition of the Louisiana territory (828,000 square miles or 2.14 million km²) by the United States from France in 1803...

The territory contained land that forms Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska; the portion of Minnesota west of the Mississippi River; a large portion of North Dakota; a large portion of South Dakota; the northeastern section of New Mexico; the northern portion of Texas; the area of Montana, Wyoming, and Colorado east of the Continental Divide; Louisiana west of the Mississippi River (plus New Orleans); and small portions of land within the present Canadian provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan.



Its non-native population was around 60,000 inhabitants, of whom half were African slaves. The Kingdom of France controlled the Louisiana territory from 1699 until it was ceded to Spain in 1762 [After France lost the Seven Years Wars].

In 1800, Napoleon, then the First Consul of the French Republic, hoping to re-establish an empire in North America, regained ownership of Louisiana. However, France's failure to put down the revolt in Saint-Domingue [The successful slave rebellion under former slave Toussaint Louverture where Haiti gained its independence], coupled with the prospect of renewed warfare with the United Kingdom, prompted Napoleon to sell Louisiana to the United States to fund his military...

The main issue for the Americans was free transit of the Mississippi to the sea. As the lands were being gradually settled by a few American migrants, many Americans, including Jefferson, assumed that the territory would be acquired "piece by piece." The risk of another power taking it from a weakened Spain made a "profound reconsideration" of this policy necessary. New Orleans was already important for shipping agricultural goods to and from the areas of the United States west of the Appalachian Mountains.

Pinckney's Treaty, signed with Spain on October 27, 1795, gave American merchants...use of the port to store goods for export...The treaty also recognized American rights to navigate the entire Mississippi, which had become vital to the growing trade of the western territories.

On April 11, 1803... Barbé-Marbois offered [American ambassador] Livingston all of Louisiana for \$15 million, (equivalent to about \$300 million in 2016 dollars) which averages to less than three cents per acre (7 ¢/ha).

The American representatives were prepared to pay up to \$10 million for New Orleans and its environs, but were dumbfounded when the vastly larger territory was offered for \$15 million. Jefferson had authorized Livingston only to purchase New Orleans. However, Livingston was certain that the United States would accept the offer.

The Americans thought that Napoleon might withdraw the offer at any time, preventing the United States from acquiring New Orleans, so they agreed and signed the Louisiana Purchase Treaty on April 30, 1803. On July 4, 1803, the treaty reached Washington, D.C.

The Louisiana Territory was vast, stretching from the Gulf of Mexico in the south to Rupert's Land in the north, and from the Mississippi River in the east to the Rocky Mountains in the west. Acquiring the territory would double the size of the United States, at a sum of less than 3 cents per acre.

Over the next 50 years through treaties with Great Britain, Spain and Mexico and following a war with Mexico the United States as show in the map below acquired the remaining territory of today's continental United States. In 1867 America bought Alaska from Russia and in 1959 the state of Hawaii was added as the 50th state of the union after being annexed by the United States 50 years earlier.



Below are a series of quotes from Wikipedia covering more on the relations between the European colonists and the Native Americans:

Through the mid 17th century the Beaver Wars were fought over the fur trade between the Iroquois and the Hurons, the northern Algonquians, and their French allies.

During the war the Iroquois destroyed several large tribal confederacies—including the Huron, Neutral, Erie, Susquehannock, and Shawnee, and became dominant in the region and enlarged their territory.

Between 1754 and 1763, many Native American tribes were involved in the French and Indian War/Seven Years' War. Those involved in the fur trade in the northern areas tended to ally with French forces against British colonial militias. Native Americans fought on both sides of the conflict. The greater number of tribes fought with the French in the hopes of checking British expansion. The British had made fewer allies, but it was joined by some tribes that wanted to prove assimilation and loyalty in support of treaties to preserve their territories. They were often disappointed when such treaties were later overturned. The tribes had their own purposes, using their alliances with the European powers to battle traditional Native enemies...

During the American Revolution, the newly proclaimed United States competed with the British for the allegiance of Native American nations east of the Mississippi River. Most Native Americans who joined the struggle sided with the British, based both on their trading relationships and hopes that colonial defeat would result in a halt to further colonial expansion onto Native American land.

Many native communities were divided over which side to support in the war and others wanted to remain neutral. The first native community to sign a treaty with the new United States Government was the Lenape. For the Iroquois Confederacy, based in New York, the American Revolution resulted in civil war. The only Iroquois tribes to ally with the colonials were the Oneida and Tuscarora.

Frontier warfare during the American Revolution was particularly brutal, and numerous atrocities were committed by settlers and native tribes alike. Noncombatants suffered greatly during the war. Military expeditions on each side destroyed villages and food supplies to reduce the ability of people to fight, as in frequent raids by both sides in the Mohawk Valley and western New York.

The largest of these expeditions was the Sullivan Expedition of 1779, in which American colonial troops destroyed more than 40 Iroquois villages to neutralize Iroquois raids in upstate New York. The expedition failed to have the desired effect: Native American activity became even more determined.

The British made peace with the Americans in the Treaty of Paris (1783), through which they ceded vast Native American territories [between the Mississippi and the Appalachians] to the United States without informing or consulting with the Native Americans. The Northwest Indian War was led by Native American tribes trying to repulse American settlers.

The United States initially treated the Native Americans who had fought as allies with the British as a conquered people who had lost their lands.

Although most members of the Iroquois tribes went to Canada with the Loyalists, others tried to stay in New York and western territories to maintain their lands.

The state of New York made a separate treaty with Iroquois nations and put up for sale 5,000,000 acres (20,000 km²) of land that had previously been their territories. The state established small reservations in western New York for the remnant peoples...

The United States was eager to expand, to develop farming and settlements in new areas, and to satisfy land hunger of settlers from New England and new immigrants. The national government initially sought to purchase Native American land by treaties. The states and settlers were frequently at odds with this policy.

George Washington advocated the advancement of Native American society and he "harbored some measure of goodwill towards the Indians"...

"Whereas it hath at this time become peculiarly necessary to warn the citizens of the United States against a violation of the treaties.... I do by these presents require, all officers of the United States, as well civil as military, and all other citizens and inhabitants thereof, to govern themselves according to the treaties and act aforesaid, as they will answer the contrary at their peril" — George Washington, Proclamation Regarding Treaties, 1790.

United States policy toward Native Americans had continued to evolve after the American Revolution. George Washington and Henry Knox believed that Native Americans were equals but that their society was inferior. Washington formulated a policy to encourage the "civilizing" process.

Washington had a six-point plan for civilization which included:

**Impartial justice toward Native Americans
Regulated buying of Native American lands
Promotion of commerce
Promotion of experiments to civilize or improve Native American society
Presidential authority to give presents
Punishing those who violated Native American rights...**

The United States appointed agents, like Benjamin Hawkins, to live among the Native Americans and to teach them how to live like whites.

"How different would be the sensation of a philosophic mind to reflect that instead of exterminating a part of the human race by our modes of population that we had persevered through all difficulties and at last had imparted our Knowledge of cultivating and the arts, to the Aborigines of the Country by which the source of future life and happiness had been preserved and extended. But it has been conceived to be impracticable to civilize the Indians of North America — This opinion is probably more convenient than just" — Henry Knox to George Washington, 1790s.

In the late 18th century, reformers starting with Washington and Knox, supported educating native children and adults, in efforts to "civilize" or otherwise assimilate Native Americans to the larger society (as opposed to relegating them to reservations). The Civilization Fund Act of 1819 promoted this civilization policy by providing funding to societies (mostly religious) who worked on Native American improvement.

"I rejoice, brothers, to hear you propose to become cultivators of the earth for the maintenance of your families.

"Be assured you will support them better and with less labor, by raising stock and bread, and by spinning and weaving clothes, than by hunting. A little land cultivated, and a little labor, will procure more provisions than the most successful hunt; and a woman will clothe more by spinning and weaving, than a man by hunting.

"Compared with you, we are but as of yesterday in this land. Yet see how much more we have multiplied by industry, and the exercise of that reason which you possess in common with us. Follow then our example, brethren, and we will aid you with great pleasure" — President Thomas Jefferson, Brothers of the Choctaw Nation, December 17, 1803.

As American expansion continued, Native Americans resisted settlers' encroachment in several regions of the new nation (and in unorganized territories), from the Northwest to the Southeast, and then in the West, as settlers encountered the tribes of the Great Plains...

Native American nations on the plains in the west continued armed conflicts with the United States throughout the 19th century, through what were called generally "Indian Wars." The Battle of Little Bighorn (1876) was one of the greatest Native American victories. Defeats included the Sioux Uprising of 1862, the Sand Creek Massacre (1864) and Wounded Knee in 1890. Indian Wars continued into the early 20th century.

According to the U.S. Bureau of the Census (1894),

"The Indian wars under the government of the United States have been more than 40 in number. They have cost the lives of about 19,000 white men, women and children, including those killed in individual combats, and the lives of about 30,000 Indians. The actual number of killed and wounded Indians must be very much higher than the given... Fifty percent additional would be a safe estimate"...

The age of Manifest Destiny, which came to be associated with extinguishing American Indian territorial claims and removing them to reservations, gained ground as the United States population explored and settled west of the Mississippi River. Although Indian Removal from the Southeast had been proposed by some as a humanitarian measure to ensure their survival away from Americans, conflicts of the 19th century led some European-Americans to regard the natives as "savages"...

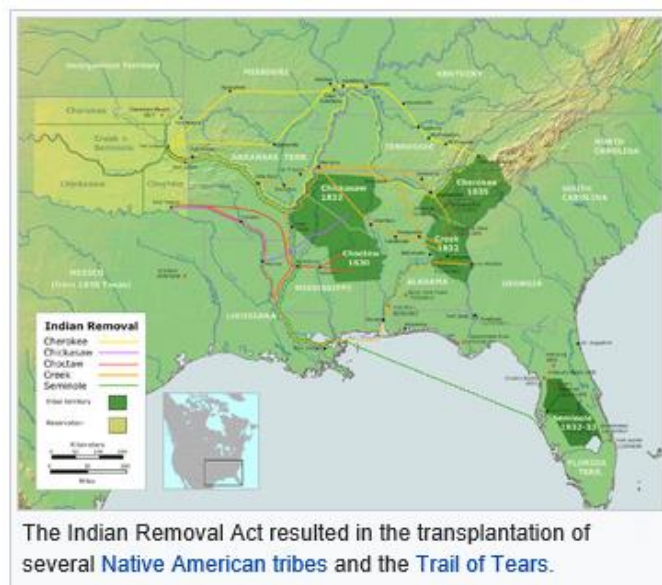
In the 19th century, the incessant westward expansion of the United States incrementally compelled large numbers of Native Americans to resettle further west, often by force, almost always reluctantly. Native Americans believed this forced relocation illegal, given the Hopewell Treaty of 1785.

Under President Andrew Jackson, United States Congress passed the Indian Removal Act of 1830, which authorized the President to conduct treaties to exchange Native American land east of the Mississippi River for lands west of the river.

As many as 100,000 Native Americans relocated to the West as a result of this Indian Removal policy. In theory, relocation was supposed to be voluntary and many Native Americans did remain in the East. In practice, great pressure was put on Native American leaders to sign removal treaties.

The most egregious violation of the stated intention of the removal policy took place under the Treaty of New Echota, which was signed by a dissident faction of Cherokees but not the principal chief. The following year, the Cherokee conceded to removal, but Georgia included their land in a lottery for European-American settlement before that.

President Jackson [who was of the Democratic party] used the military to gather and transport the Cherokee to the west, whose timing and lack of adequate supplies led to the deaths of an estimated 4,000 Cherokees on the Trail of Tears.



About 17,000 Cherokees, along with approximately 2,000 enslaved blacks held by Cherokees, were taken by force migration to Indian Territory.

Tribes were generally located to reservations where they could more easily be separated from traditional life and pushed into European-American society. Some southern states additionally enacted laws in the 19th century forbidding non-Native American settlement on Native American lands, with the intention to prevent sympathetic white missionaries from aiding the scattered Native American resistance...

After the Indian wars in the late 19th century, the United States established Native American boarding schools, initially run primarily by or affiliated with Christian missionaries. At this time American society thought that Native American children needed to be acculturated to the general society. The boarding school experience often proved traumatic to Native American children, who were forbidden to speak their native languages, taught Christianity and denied the right to practice their native religions, and in numerous other ways forced to abandon their Native American identities and adopt European-American culture.

Since the late 20th century, investigations have documented cases of sexual, physical and mental abuse occurring at such schools...Since the rise of self-determination for Native Americans, they have generally emphasized education of their children at schools near where they live. In addition, many federally recognized tribes have taken over operations of such schools and added programs of language retention and revival to strengthen their cultures. Beginning in the 1970s, tribes have also founded colleges at their reservations, controlled and operated by Native Americans, to educate their young for jobs as well as to pass on their cultures (**Wikipedia article – History of Native Americans in the United States**).

The region that would later be the western United States had been penetrated by U. S. forces and settlers before this period, notably by fur trappers, the Santa Fe Trail, the Oregon Trail and the Mormon emigration to Utah, as well as by settlement of California and Oregon.

Relations between American Immigrants and Native Americans were generally peaceful. In the case of the Santa Fe Trail, this was due to the friendly relationship of the Bent's Fort with the Cheyenne and Arapaho, and in the case of the Oregon Trail, to the peace established by the Treaty of Fort Laramie.

Signed in 1851 between the United States and the plains Indians and the Indians of the northern Rocky Mountains, the treaty allowed passage by immigrants and the building of roads and the stationing of troops along the Oregon Trail.

The Pike's Peak Gold Rush of 1859 introduced a substantial white population into the Front Range of the Rockies supported by a trading lifeline that crossed the central Great Plains. Advancing settlement following the passage of the Homestead Act and the building of the transcontinental railways following the Civil War further destabilized the situation, placing white settlers into direct competition for the land and resources of the Great Plains and the Rocky Mountain West.

Further factors included discovery of gold in the Black Hills, resulting in the gold rush of 1875–1878, and, earlier, in Montana during the Montana Gold Rush of 1862–1863 and the opening of the Bozeman Trail, which led to Red Cloud's War and later the Great Sioux War of 1876–77...

The Sioux of the Northern Plains and the Apache of the Southwest provided the most celebrated opposition to encroachment on tribal lands. Led by resolute, militant leaders, such as Red Cloud and Crazy Horse, the Sioux were skilled at high-speed mounted warfare. The Sioux were relatively new arrivals on the Plains, as, previously, they had been sedentary farmers in the Great Lakes region. Once they learned to capture and ride horses, they moved west, displacing other Indian tribes and became feared warriors. Historically the Apache bands supplemented their economy by raiding others and practiced warfare to avenge a death of a kinsman. The Apache bands were adept at fighting and highly elusive in the environments of desert and canyons...

After 1865 national policy called for all Indians either to assimilate into the general population as citizens, or to live peacefully on reservations. Raids and wars between tribes were not allowed, and armed Indian bands off a reservation were the responsibility of the Army to round up and return...

In 1875, the Great Sioux War of 1876–77, the last serious Sioux war erupted, when the Dakota gold rush penetrated the Black Hills. The U.S. Government decided to stop evicting trespassers from the Black Hills, and offered to buy the land from the Sioux.



An 1899 chromolithograph of US cavalry pursuing American Indians, artist unknown

When they refused, the Government decided instead to take the land, and gave the Lakota until January 31, 1876 to return to reservations. With the deadline's passing, the tribes were absent from the reservations, and military action commenced.

After several indecisive encounters, Lt. Colonel George Custer found the main encampment of the Lakota and their allies at the Battle of the Little Bighorn. Custer and his men — who were separated from their main body of troops — were all killed by the far more numerous Indians who had the tactical advantage. They were led in the field by Crazy Horse and inspired by Sitting Bull's earlier vision of victory.

Later, in 1890, a Ghost Dance ritual on the Northern Lakota reservation at Wounded Knee, South Dakota, led to the Army's attempt to subdue the Lakota. On December 29 during this attempt, gunfire erupted, and soldiers killed up to 300 Indians, mostly old men, women and children in the Wounded Knee Massacre...

Long before this, the means of subsistence and the societies of the indigenous population of the Great Plains had been destroyed by the slaughter of the buffalo, driven almost to extinction in the 1880s by indiscriminate hunting...

The U.S. government had two purposes when making land agreements with Native Americans: to open it up more land for white settlement, and to ease tensions between whites and Native Americans by forcing the Native Americans to use the land in the same way as did the whites—for subsistence farms. The government used a variety of strategies to achieve these goals; many treaties required Native Americans to become farmers in order to keep their land.

Government officials often did not translate the documents which Native Americans were forced to sign, and native chiefs often had little or no idea what they were signing (**Wikipedia article – American Indian Wars**).

Today, other than tribes successfully running casinos, many tribes struggle, as they are often located on reservations isolated from the main economic centers of the country. The estimated 2.1 million Native Americans are the most impoverished of all ethnic groups.

According to the 2000 Census, an estimated 400,000 Native Americans reside on reservation land. While some tribes have had success with gaming, only 40% of the 562 federally recognized tribes operate casinos.



According to a 2007 survey by the U.S. Small Business Administration, only 1% of Native Americans own and operate a business.

Social statistics highlight the challenges faced by Native American communities: highest teen suicide rate of all minorities at 18.5 per 100,000, highest rate of teen pregnancy, highest high school drop-out rate at 54%, lowest per capita income, and unemployment rates between 50% and 90%.

The barriers to economic development on Native American reservations have been identified by Joseph Kalt and Stephen Cornell of the Harvard Project on American Indian Economic Development at Harvard University, in their report: What Can Tribes Do? Strategies and Institutions in American Indian Economic Development (2008), are summarized as follows:

- Lack of access to capital
- Lack of human capital (education, skills, technical expertise) and the means to develop it
- Reservations lack effective planning
- Reservations are poor in natural resources
- Reservations have natural resources, but lack sufficient control over them
- Reservations are disadvantaged by their distance from markets and the high costs of transportation
- Tribes cannot persuade investors to locate on reservations because of intense competition from non-Native American communities
- The Bureau of Indian Affairs is inept, corrupt, and/or uninterested in reservation development
- Tribal politicians and bureaucrats are inept or corrupt
- On-reservation factionalism destroys stability in tribal decisions
- The instability of tribal government keeps outsiders from investing. (Many tribes adopted constitutions by the 1934 Indian Reorganization Act model, with two-year terms for elected positions of chief and council members deemed too short by the authors for getting things done)
- Entrepreneurial skills and experience are scarce
- Tribal cultures get in the way

A major barrier to development is the lack of entrepreneurial knowledge and experience within Indian reservations. "A general lack of education and experience about business is a significant challenge to prospective entrepreneurs", was the report on Native American entrepreneurship by the Northwest Area Foundation in 2004 (**Wikipedia article – Native Americans in the United States**).

Canada

Apart from the French speaking settlers of Quebec, the bulk of Canada's early settlers, like those of America, came from Britain and were descended from the tribe of Joseph.

Canada would become a part of the "company of nations" that would descend from Ephraim, the patriarch Joseph who received the birthright promises from God (**Genesis 48:19**).

Again, it is purely from the understanding of the birthright promises to the descendants of Joseph that the English-speaking, British-descended people of Canada can draw any true claim to the land of Canada from their Creator God.

The United States invaded Canada twice - once during the American War of Independence and the other time during the War of 1812. The Americans felt that colonial Canadians would rise up and desire independence from Britain just as they did.

Canadians have always been more loyal to Britain than the Americans and wanted to remain a part of the British Empire. After they became an independent nation they remained a part of the Commonwealth of Nations.

The following quote from Raymond McNair gives evidence for why Canada is descended from Ephraim and not Manasseh despite the similarity of its people to America:

This [God's providential help of the Americans in achieving independence from Britain], however, does NOT mean that God favored the Americans (Manassites) over the British (Ephraimites). He was simply working out His purpose. God gave the Americans victory when they fought in their own land - but NOT when they advanced into British Canadian territory:

"From the beginning, America's first campaign of territorial conquest [into Canada] seemed dogged with misfortune. Everything went wrong.... The annexation of Canada was clearly not in God's plan for the United States...."

"It was as if God had a different plan for Canada...a plan separate and distinct from His plan for America" (Peter Marshall and David Manuel, *The Light and the Glory*, pp. 292, 295-296).

And so He did. God, we now know, had reserved that area for Ephraim! Thus, God divided the descendants of Ephraim and Manasseh politically and began to bless them in their separate courses - yet not so separate, for these sons of Joseph are close brothers. The Declaration of Independence even mentions "the ties of our common kindred"! (America and Britain in Prophecy, p.48).

There are two main branches of the native peoples in the Americas. The vast majority descended from Tiras are the Native Americans or Amerindians. These are the Native Americans of subarctic Canada, USA, Mexico, Central and South America.

A second branch are the Arctic Native American peoples known as the Inuit (Eskimos) and the Aleut.

This Arctic branch of Native Americans, also descended from the line of Japheth, are far more Asiatic / East Oriental in appearance than the Native Americans of the rest of the Americas. They are related to the Lapps of Arctic Scandinavia and Russia.



The Arctic Native Americans today now have a controlling interest in the new Arctic province of Nunavut (formed in 1999) that includes the Arctic Archipelago and the previous eastern half of the Northwest Territories.

This is fitting as they form a significantly high proportion of the population in a land that most white people do not wish to settle. It does have significant natural resources, particularly oil.



It may well be that this is part of their land inheritance from God. The Arctic part of Eurasia similarly could also be a part of their land inheritance from God.

The most dominant Native American tribe in Canada was the Cree who occupied most of central Canada and Ontario and Quebec. The Montagnais people and other tribes were in Eastern Canada.



The Native Americans of Canada are related racially to the other Native Americans of Central and South America who do appear to have claim to all the lands from Mexico through to the northern half of South America. It would appear that the Native Americans are likely to have a share in that great area devoted to their race.

The Canadians of European descent like their American counterparts also had a mixed track record of just and unjust dealings with the Native Americans that they displaced as they settled Canada.

Below are a series of quotes from Wikipedia covering more on the early history of Canada and relations between the European colonists and the Native Americans:

Under letters patent from King Henry VII of England, the Italian John Cabot became the first European known to have landed in Canada after the time of the Vikings. Records indicate that on 24 June 1497 he sighted land at a northern location believed to be somewhere in the Atlantic provinces. Official tradition deemed the first landing site to be at Cape Bonavista, Newfoundland...

French interest in the New World began with Francis I of France, who in 1524 sponsored Giovanni da Verrazzano to navigate the region between Florida and Newfoundland in hopes of finding a route to the Pacific Ocean.

Jacques Cartier planted a cross in the Gaspé Peninsula [southern mouth of St Lawrence River] in 1534 and claimed the land called Canada the following summer... French fishing fleets sailed the Atlantic coast and into the St. Lawrence River, trading and making alliances with First Nations...



In 1604, a North American fur trade monopoly was granted to Pierre Du Gua, Sieur de Mons. The fur trade became one of the main economic ventures in North America. Du Gua led his first colonization expedition to an island located near the mouth of the St. Croix River. Among his lieutenants was a geographer named Samuel de Champlain, who promptly carried out a major exploration of the northeastern coastline of what is now the United States. In the spring of 1605, under Samuel de Champlain, the new St. Croix settlement was moved to Port Royal (today's Annapolis Royal, Nova Scotia)...

In 1608 Champlain founded what is now Quebec City, one of the earliest permanent settlements, which would become the capital of New France. He took personal administration over the city and its affairs, and sent out expeditions to explore the interior. Champlain himself discovered Lake Champlain in 1609. By 1615, he had travelled by canoe up the Ottawa River through Lake Nipissing and Georgian Bay to the centre of Huron country near Lake Simcoe.



During these voyages, Champlain aided the Wendat (aka "Hurons") in their battles against the Iroquois Confederacy. As a result, the Iroquois would become enemies of the French and be involved in multiple conflicts (known as the French and Iroquois Wars) until the signing of the Great Peace of Montreal in 1701.

The English, led by Humphrey Gilbert, had claimed St. John's, Newfoundland, in 1583 as the first North American English colony by royal prerogative of Queen Elizabeth I...

On September 29, 1621, a charter for the foundation of a New World Scottish colony was granted by King James to Sir William Alexander. In 1622, the first settlers left Scotland.

They initially failed and permanent Nova Scotian settlements were not firmly established until 1629 during the end of the Anglo-French War...

In 1631, under Charles I of England [and Scotland], the Treaty of Suza was signed, ending the war and returning Nova Scotia to the French.



New France was not fully restored to French rule until the 1632 Treaty of Saint-Germain-en-Laye. This led to new French immigrants and the founding of Trois-Rivières in 1634.

New France's interior frontier would eventually cover an immense area with a thin network centred on fur trade, conversion efforts by missionaries, establishing and claiming an empire, and military efforts to protect and further those efforts. The largest of these canoe networks covered much of present-day Canada and central present-day United States...

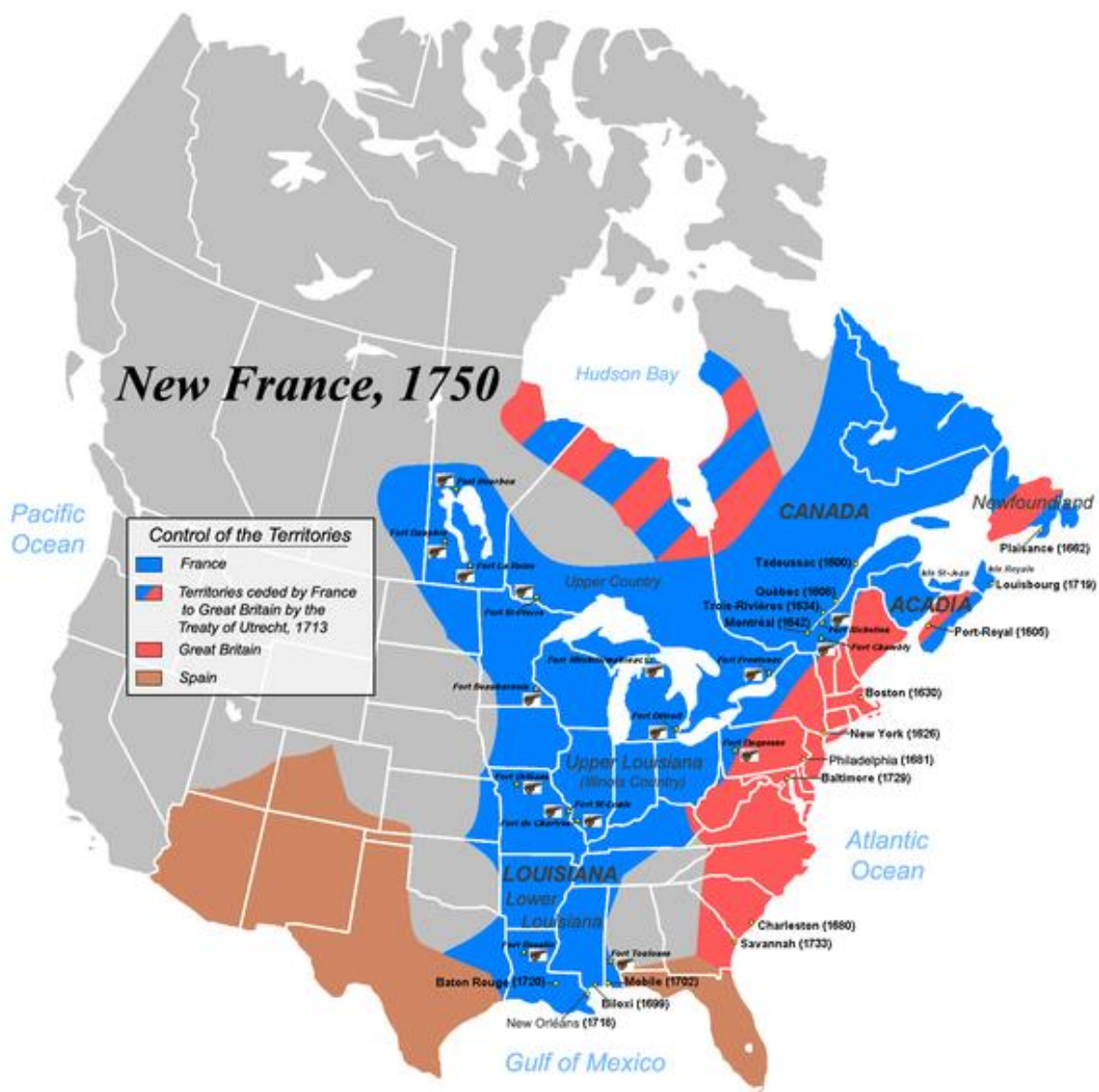
In 1642, the Sulpicians sponsored a group of settlers led by Paul Chomedey de Maisonneuve, who founded Ville-Marie, precursor to present-day Montreal. In 1663 the French crown took direct control of the colonies from the Company of New France. Although immigration rates to New France remained very low under direct French control, most of the new arrivals were farmers, and the rate of population growth among the settlers themselves had been very high...

By the early 1700s the New France settlers were well established along the shores of the Saint Lawrence River and parts of Nova Scotia, with a population around 16,000.

However new arrivals stopped coming from France in the proceeding decades, resulting in the English and Scottish settlers in Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, and the southern Thirteen Colonies to vastly outnumber the French population approximately 10 to 1 by the 1750s.

From 1670, through the Hudson's Bay Company, the English also laid claim to Hudson Bay and its drainage basin known as Rupert's Land establishing new trading posts and forts, while continuing to operate fishing settlements in Newfoundland. French expansion along the Canadian canoe routes challenged the Hudson's Bay Company claims, and in 1686, Pierre Troyes led an overland expedition from Montreal to the shore of the bay, where they managed to capture a handful of outposts. La Salle's explorations gave France a claim to the Mississippi River Valley, where fur trappers and a few settlers set up scattered forts and settlements...

During Queen Anne's War (1702 to 1713), the British Conquest of Acadia occurred in 1710, resulting in Nova Scotia, other than Cape Breton, being officially ceded to the British by the Treaty of Utrecht including Rupert's Land [Land around Hudson's Bay], which France had conquered in the late 17th century (Battle of Hudson's Bay)...



The British ordered the Acadians expelled from their lands [today's New Brunswick] in 1755 during the French and Indian War, an event called the Expulsion of the Acadians or le Grand Dérangement.

The "expulsion" resulted in approximately 12,000 Acadians being shipped to destinations throughout Britain's North America and to France, Quebec and the French Caribbean colony of Saint-Domingue [Haiti]...Many of the Acadians settled in southern Louisiana, creating the Cajun culture there...

Britain eventually gained control of Quebec City and Montreal after the Battle of the Plains of Abraham and Battle of Fort Niagara in 1759, and the Battle of the Thousand Islands and Battle of Sainte-Foy in 1760...

With the end of the Seven Years' War and the signing of the Treaty of Paris (1763), France renounced its claims to territory in mainland North America...

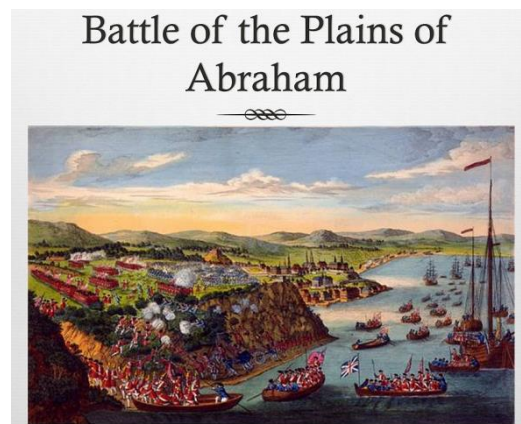
France had already secretly transferred its vast Louisiana territory to Spain under the Treaty of Fontainebleau (1762) in which King Louis XV of France had given his cousin King Charles III of Spain the entire area of the drainage basin of the Mississippi River...

Britain returned to France its most important sugar-producing colony, Guadeloupe, which the French considered more valuable than Canada. Guadeloupe produced more sugar than all the British islands combined...

The British and French fought for control of North America and the Caribbean and the wealth of trade it brought to their countries. The French and Indian War was the North American part of a worldwide series of conflicts known as the Seven Years War (1756-1763).

In Europe it involved most of the major powers of Europe, in particular Prussia, Great Britain, and Hanover on one side and Austria, Saxony, France, Russia, Sweden, and Spain on the other. In India the British fought the French with the British being the victors and then going on to take control of all India in the years that followed.

The decisive battle for the French and Indian War was the British capture of the "impregnable" city of Quebec where the fighting was centered on the aptly named Plains of Abraham. The British scaled the nearby steep cliffs under the cover of darkness, hauling guns up by ropes and surprised the French on the high plateau where the French fort was.



After their defeat the French, at the signing of the first Treaty of Paris in 1763, surrendered all the French territory in eastern Canada plus all the American territory they owned east of the Mississippi River with the exception of New Orleans that was a part of Louisiana that was ceded to the Spanish. The French Quebecians and French Acadians who moved to New Orleans were now ruled by different nations other than France.

The British between 1763 and 1776 controlled all of Canada and all of America east of the Mississippi, including Florida which Spain surrendered at the signing of the first Treaty of Paris in 1763 (The British gave back Florida to the Spanish at the end of the American War of Independence in 1783 and the Spanish then ceded it to the United States in 1819).

Regarding the French and Indian War "The Heritage of World Civilizations, Volume 2" says the following:

The architect of victory was William Pitt the Elder (1708-1778). Although Pitt had previously criticized British involvement with the continent, once named secretary of state in charge of the war in 1757 he reversed himself and pumped huge financial subsidies to Frederick the Great. But North America was Pitt's real concern.

Put simply, he wanted all of North America east of the Mississippi for Great Britain, and that was exactly what he won as he directed unprecedented resources into the overseas colonial conflict. The French government was unwilling and unable to direct similar resources against the English in America.

In September 1759, at the Plains of Abraham overlooking the valley of the Saint Lawrence River at Quebec City, the British army under General James Wolfe defeated the French under Lieutenant General Louis Joseph Montcalm. The French empire in Canada was coming to an end.

Pitt's colonial vision, however, extended beyond the Saint Lawrence valley and the Great Lakes Basin. The major islands of the French West Indies fell to the British fleets.

On the Indian subcontinent, the British forces under the command of Robert Clive defeated the French in 1757 at the Battle of Plassey. This victory opened the way for the eventual conquest of Bengal and later of all India by the British East India Company. Never had any European power experienced such complete worldwide military victory (p.710-711).

That northern part of France descended from the Franks are descendants of the firstborn son of Jacob (Israel) – Reuben. Of the NW European nations descended from Israel the French were the first to have a great empire.

The descendants of Reuben, at a subconscious level, have tried hard to take back the double-portion of the birthright blessings from Joseph. Just before the time that Ephraim and Manasseh would inherit the birthright the French controlled much of eastern Canada and the vast Mississippi Basin (Louisiana Territory).

The decisive battle in the French and Indian War was the British capture of the "impregnable" city of Quebec where the fighting was centered on the aptly named Plains of Abraham. Britain thereafter acquired the French territory of eastern Canada.

In 1803 Napoleon sold the vast Louisiana Territory (8.28 million acres of the world's richest and most fertile land) to the new nation of the United States in order to fund his war efforts to expand France's empire in Europe. This event is seen by some as a symbolic handing over of the birthright from Reuben to Joseph.

Through the French support of the Americans in their War of Independence and the sale of the Louisiana Territory, France hoped to create a rival who would weaken England. They elevated one branch of the family of Joseph and then lost to the other branch on both sea and land when the British defeated them in the battles of Trafalgar and Waterloo.

Continuing on now from Wikipedia:

During the American Revolution, there was some sympathy for the American cause among the Acadians and the New Englanders in Nova Scotia. Neither party joined the rebels, although several hundred individuals joined the revolutionary cause.

An invasion of Quebec by the Continental Army in 1775, with a goal to take Quebec from British control, was halted at the Battle of Quebec by Guy Carleton, with the assistance of local militias...

When the British evacuated New York City in 1783, they took many Loyalist refugees to Nova Scotia, while other Loyalists went to southwestern Quebec.

So many Loyalists arrived on the shores of the St. John River that a separate colony — New Brunswick — was created in 1784 followed in 1791 by the division of Quebec into the largely French-speaking Lower Canada (French Canada [Quebec]) along the St. Lawrence River and Gaspé Peninsula and an anglophone Loyalist Upper Canada [Ontario], with its capital settled by 1796 in York, in present-day Toronto...

Between the Napoleonic Wars and 1850, some 800,000 immigrants came to the colonies of British North America, mainly from the British Isles, as part of the great migration of Canada. These included Gaelic-speaking Highland Scots displaced by the Highland Clearances to Nova Scotia and Scottish and English settlers to the Canadas, particularly Upper Canada [Ontario].

The Irish Famine of the 1840s significantly increased the pace of Irish Catholic immigration to British North America, with over 35,000 distressed Irish landing in Toronto alone in 1847 and 1848..

The Colony of Vancouver Island was chartered in 1849, with the trading post at Fort Victoria as the capital. This was followed by the Colony of the Queen Charlotte Islands in 1853, and by the creation of the Colony of British Columbia in 1858 and the Stikine Territory in 1861, with the latter three being founded expressly to keep those regions from being overrun and annexed by American gold miners. The Colony of the Queen Charlotte Islands and most of the Stikine Territory were merged into the Colony of British Columbia in 1863 (the remainder, north of the 60th Parallel, became part of the North-Western Territory)...

The Seventy-Two Resolutions from the 1864 Quebec Conference and Charlottetown Conference laid out the framework for uniting British colonies in North America into a federation.

They had been adopted by the majority of the provinces of Canada and became the basis for the London Conference of 1866, which led to the formation of the Dominion of Canada on July 1, 1867. The term dominion was chosen to indicate Canada's status as a self-governing colony of the British Empire, the first time it was used about a country...



Federation emerged from multiple impulses: the British wanted Canada to defend itself; the Maritimes needed railroad connections, which were promised in 1867; British-Canadian nationalism sought to unite the lands into one country, dominated by the English language and British culture; many French-Canadians saw an opportunity to exert political control within a new largely French-speaking Quebec and fears of possible U.S. expansion northward.

On a political level, there was a desire for the expansion of responsible government and elimination of the legislative deadlock between Upper and Lower Canada, and their replacement with provincial legislatures in a federation...

Using the lure of the Canadian Pacific Railway, a transcontinental line that would unite the nation, Ottawa attracted support in the Maritimes and in British Columbia.

In 1866, the Colony of British Columbia and the Colony of Vancouver Island merged into a single Colony of British Columbia; it joined the Canadian Confederation in 1871.

In 1873, Prince Edward Island joined. Newfoundland — which had no use for a transcontinental railway —voted no in 1869, and did not join Canada until 1949.

In 1873 John A. Macdonald (First Prime Minister of Canada) created the North-West Mounted Police (now the Royal Canadian Mounted Police) to help police the Northwest Territories. Specifically the Mounties were to assert Canadian sovereignty over possible American encroachments into the sparsely populated land.

The Mounties' first large-scale mission was to suppress the second independence movement by Manitoba's Métis, a mixed blood people of joint First Nations and European descent, who originated in the mid-17th century. The desire for independence erupted in the Red River Rebellion in 1869 and the later North-West Rebellion in 1885 led by Louis Riel. Suppressing the Rebellion was Canada's first independent military action. It cost about \$5 million and demonstrated the need to complete the Canadian Pacific Railway. It guaranteed Anglophone control of the Prairies, and demonstrated the national government was capable of decisive action.

Following the Balfour Declaration of 1926, the British Parliament passed the Statute of Westminster in 1931 which acknowledged Canada as coequal with the United Kingdom and the other Commonwealth realms. It was a crucial step in the development of Canada as a separate state in that it provided for nearly complete legislative autonomy from the Parliament of the United Kingdom. Although the United Kingdom retained formal authority over certain Canadian constitutional changes, it relinquished this authority with the passing of the Canada Act 1982 which was the final step in achieving full sovereignty (**Wikipedia article – History of Canada**).

From the late 18th century, European Canadians (and the Canadian government) encouraged assimilation of Aboriginal culture into what was referred to as "Canadian culture". These attempts reached a climax in the late 19th and early 20th centuries, with a series of initiatives that aimed at complete assimilation and subjugation of the Aboriginal peoples. These policies, which were made possible by legislation such as the Gradual Civilization Act and the Indian Act, focused on European ideals of Christianity, sedentary living, agriculture, and education.

The attempt at Christianization of the Aboriginal people of Canada had been ongoing since the first missionaries arrived in the 1600s, however it became more systematic with the Indian Act in 1876, which would bring new sanctions for those who did not convert to Christianity. For example, the new laws would prevent non-Christian Aboriginal people from testifying or having their cases heard in court and ban alcohol consumption.

When the Indian Act was amended in 1884, traditional religious and social practices, such as the Potlatch, would be banned, and further amendments in 1920 would prevent "status Indians" (as defined in the Act) from wearing traditional dress or performing traditional dances in an attempt to stop all non-Christian practices.

Another focus of the Canadian government was to make the Aboriginal groups of Canada sedentary, as they thought that this would make them easier to assimilate. In the 19th century, the government began to support the creation of model farming villages, which were meant to encourage non-sedentary Aboriginal groups to settle in an area and begin to cultivate agriculture.

When most of these model farming villages failed, the government turned instead to the creation of Indian reserves with the Indian Act of 1876. With the creation of these reserves came many restricting laws, such as further bans on all intoxicants, restrictions on eligibility to vote in band elections, decreased hunting and fishing areas, and inability for status Indians to visit other groups on their reservations...

The final government strategy of assimilation, made possible by the Indian Act was the Canadian residential school system:

Of all the initiatives that were undertaken in the first century of Confederation, none was more ambitious or central to the civilizing strategy of the Department, to its goal of assimilation, than the residential school system... it was the residential school experience that would lead children most effectively out of their "savage" communities into "higher civilization" and "full citizenship."

Beginning in 1847 and lasting until 1996, the Canadian government, in partnership with the Catholic Church, ran 130 residential boarding schools across Canada for Aboriginal children, who were forcibly taken from their homes. While the schools were said to educate, they were plagued by under-funding, disease, and abuse...

Indian reserves, established in Canadian law by treaties such as Treaty 7, are lands of First Nations recognized by non-indigenous governments. Some reserves are within cities, such as the Opawikoscikan Reserve in Prince Albert, Saskatchewan, Wendake in Quebec City or Stony Plain 135 in the Edmonton Metropolitan Region. There are more reserves in Canada than there are First Nations, which were ceded multiple reserves by treaty.

Aboriginal people currently work in a variety of occupations and may live outside their ancestral homes. The traditional cultures of their ancestors, shaped by nature, still exert a strong influence on them, from spirituality to political attitudes.

Because of laws and policies that encouraged or required Indigenous peoples to assimilate into a Eurocentric society, Canada violated the United Nations Genocide Convention that Canada signed in 1949 and passed through Parliament in 1952...

In 2008 Prime Minister Stephen Harper issued an apology on behalf of the Canadian government and its citizens for the residential school system (Wikipedia article – Indigenous peoples in Canada).

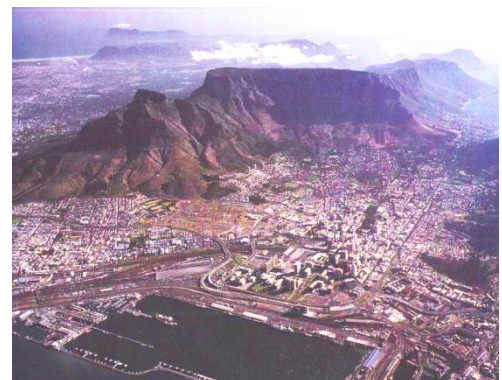
South Africa

South Africa is a country that was, in its formative years, predominantly settled by three different peoples – black Africans, the English and the Dutch.

South Africa was never settled in any great numbers by black Africans until the same time as the original European immigrants of the 1600's.

South Africa has a temperate climate not unlike sub-tropical Queensland and has some of the greatest mineral riches in the world leading the world in both gold and diamond production.

It was the Dutch who originally settled Cape Town and the area close by. The British acquired the Cape Colony from the Dutch at the time of the Napoleonic Wars and it became a part of the British Empire with the Cape of Good Hope added to the prophesied "gates of their enemies" (**Genesis 22:17**) that would be controlled by the descendants of Joseph.



The Dutch settlers moved north east further inland and created the two Dutch Afrikaaner provinces of Transvaal (in northeast South Africa) and Orange Free State (in central South Africa). In the south east of the country were the Zulus who were a particularly violent tribe who violently fought and displaced several black African tribes in the area.

From the 1960's to the 1990's South Africa became isolated on the international scene because of the Afrikaaner South African government's policies of Apartheid separating blacks from whites. The

black population by this time had outgrown that of the white population by about 5 to 1. The racial segregation ended in 1994 when Nelson Mandela was elected president.

Which ethnic people did God have in mind to inherit the land of South Africa – Ephraim (the British), Zebulun (Dutch) or Ham (black Africans)? What about other neighbouring nations like Zimbabwe, Lesotho and Swaziland?

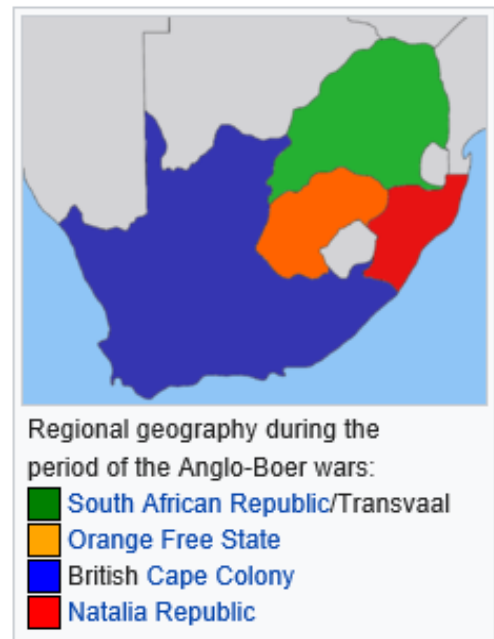
Most of South Africa lies south of the Tropic of Capricorn and has a temperate climate that is suitable for Europeans. As we have seen with North and South America this is usually an indicator that God has this area in mind for those of the white race, rather than the black race.

Mediterranean North Africa is settled by those of Arab descent (Ishmael and Mizraim) who are brown skinned. Tropical Africa from the Sahara down to the Tropic of Capricorn is certainly best suited climatically to the black skinned African peoples descended from Cush and Phut.

Sub-tropical southern Africa is climatically a better fit for those of the white race. The small black African kingdoms of Swaziland and Lesotho are both in the sub-tropical southern end of southern Africa just to complicate matters.

Based on this point the Dutch Afrikaaners who colonised a good portion of the north east of South Africa have a reasonable claim to part of the land.

Prior to the Boer War the Dutch Afrikaaners did have two independent states in Transvaal and Orange Free State before they were conquered in the Boer War and those lands centred around the rich Kimberley diamond mines were incorporated into the Union of South Africa.



The rich gold and diamond resources of the Kimberley area and Johannesburg appear to be a part of the birthright promises God had in mind for the descendants of Joseph.

The combination of those resources plus the important sea gate of the Cape of Good Hope give the British descended people a very strong claim to the land of South Africa in God's eyes. The British descended people have the strongest claim to the majority of South Africa.

Only God knows for sure if some parts of South Africa are intended for the Dutch Afrikaaners (presumably exclusive of the gold and diamond producing areas).

Also, only God knows for sure if some parts of South Africa are intended for the black Africans who are certainly deeded the vast majority of the rest of the continent of Africa. This may include the kingdoms of Swaziland and Lesotho.

Another open question that only God Himself can truly answer is how much of Zimbabwe (formerly Rhodesia) might be deeded to the British descended peoples in the Kingdom of God.

The history of South Africa has been marked by plenty of violence between all the different peoples in South Africa. There was much violence between different black African tribes and also between the British and both the Zulus and the Dutch speaking Boers. Lust for land and resources such as diamonds and gold led the local British to initiate conflict at times without the approval of the British government in England.

Below are a series of quotes from Wikipedia covering more on the history of South Africa and relations between the European colonists and the black Africans:

Bantu-speaking communities would have reached southern Africa from the Congo basin by the early centuries AD. The advancing Bantu encroached on the Khoikhoi territory, forcing the original inhabitants of the region to move to more arid areas...

The Kingdom of Mapungubwe, which was located near the northern border of present-day South Africa, at the confluence of the Limpopo and Shashe rivers adjacent to present-day Zimbabwe and Botswana, was the first indigenous kingdom in southern Africa between AD 900 and 1300. It developed into the largest kingdom in the sub-continent before it was abandoned because of climatic changes in the 14th century...

The Portuguese mariner Bartolomeu Dias was the first European to explore the coastline of South Africa in 1488, while attempting to discover a trade route to the Far East via the southernmost cape of South Africa, which he named Cabo das Tormentas, meaning Cape of Storms. In November 1497, a fleet of Portuguese ships under the command of the Portuguese mariner Vasco da Gama rounded the Cape of Good Hope.

Bartolomeu Dias



By 16 December, the fleet had passed the Great Fish River on the east coast of South Africa, where Dias had earlier turned back. Da Gama gave the name Natal to the coast he was passing, which in Portuguese means Christmas. Da Gama's fleet proceeded northwards to Zanzibar and later sailed eastwards, eventually reaching India and thereby opening the Cape Route between Europe and Asia.

The Dutch East India Company (in the Dutch of the day: Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie, or VOC) decided to establish a permanent settlement at the Cape. The VOC, one of the major European trading houses sailing the spice route to the East, had no intention of colonising the area, instead wanting only to establish a secure base camp where passing ships could shelter and be serviced, and where hungry sailors could stock up on fresh supplies of meat, fruit, and vegetables. To this end, a small VOC expedition under the command of Jan van Riebeeck reached Table Bay on 6 April 1652.

The VOC had settled at the Cape in order to supply their trading ships. As the Khoikhoi were not agricultural farmers, there was no food to trade for at the Cape and the VOC had to import Dutch farmers to establish farms to supply the passing ships as well as to supply the growing VOC settlement. The small initial group of free burghers, as these farmers were known, steadily increased in number and began to expand their farms further north and east into the territory of the Khoikhoi...

The VOC began to import large numbers of slaves, primarily from the Dutch colonies in Indonesia. Eventually, van Riebeeck and the VOC began to make indentured servants out of the Khoikhoi and the San. The offspring from miscegenation between the Dutch settlers and the Khoi-San and Malay slaves became known officially as the Cape Coloureds and the Cape Malays, respectively...



The Dutch East India Company (Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie or VOC) was a major force behind the Golden Age of Dutch exploration (ca. 1590s–1720s) and Netherlandish cartography (ca. 1570s–1670s).

In 1787, shortly before the French Revolution, a faction within the politics of the Dutch Republic known as the Patriot Party attempted to overthrow the regime of stadtholder William V. Though the revolt was crushed, it was resurrected after the French invasion of the Netherlands in 1794/1795 which resulted in the stadtholder fleeing the country. The Patriot revolutionaries then proclaimed the Batavian Republic, which was closely allied to revolutionary France. In response, the stadtholder, who had taken up residence in England, issued the Kew Letters, ordering colonial governors to surrender to the British.

The British then seized the Cape in 1795 to prevent it from falling into French hands. The Cape was relinquished back to the Dutch in 1803. In 1805, the British inherited the Cape as a prize during the Napoleonic Wars, again seizing the Cape from the French controlled Kingdom of Holland which had replaced the Batavian Republic.

Like the Dutch before them, the British initially had little interest in the Cape Colony, other than as a strategically located port...British sovereignty of the area was recognised at the Congress of Vienna in 1815, the Dutch accepting a payment of 6 million pounds for the colony.

As one of their first tasks they outlawed the use of the Dutch language in 1806 with the view of converting the European settlers to the British language and culture.

This had the effect of forcing more of the Dutch colonists to move (or trek) away from British administrative reach.

Much later, in 1820 the British authorities persuaded about 5,000 middle-class British immigrants (most of them "in trade") to leave Great Britain. Many of the 1820 Settlers eventually settled in Grahamstown and Port Elizabeth.

British policy with regard to South Africa would vacillate with successive governments, but the overarching imperative throughout the 19th century was to protect the strategic trade route to India while incurring as little expense as possible within the colony. This aim was complicated by border conflicts with the Boers, who soon developed a distaste for British authority.

Colonel Robert Jacob Gordon of the Dutch East India Company was the first European to explore parts of the interior while commanding the Dutch garrison at the renamed Cape of Good Hope, from 1780 to 1795...

Early relations between the European settlers and the Xhosa, the first Bantu peoples they met when they ventured inward, were peaceful. However, there was competition for land, and this tension led to skirmishes in the form of cattle raids from 1779.

The British explorers David Livingstone and William Oswell, setting out from a mission station in the northern Cape Colony, are believed to have been the first white men to cross the Kalahari desert in 1849...

The rise of the Zulu Empire under Shaka [1816–1828] forced other chiefdoms and clans to flee across a wide area of southern Africa. Clans fleeing the Zulu war zone included the Soshangane, Zwangendaba, Ndebele, Hlubi, Ngwane, and the Mfengu. A number of clans were caught between the Zulu Empire and advancing Voortrekkers and British Empire such as the Xhosa.

The Zulu people are part of the Nguni tribe and were originally a minor clan in what is today northern KwaZulu-Natal, founded ca. 1709 by Zulu kaNtombela.



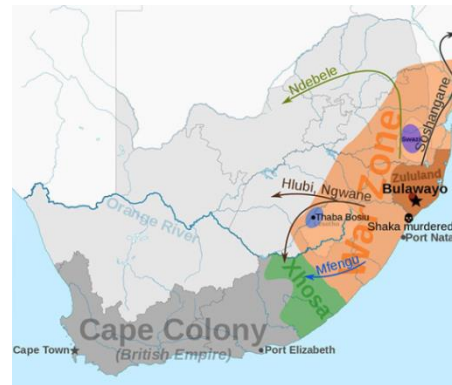
Shaka Zulu in traditional Zulu military garb

The 1820s saw a time of immense upheaval relating to the military expansion of the Zulu Kingdom, which replaced the original African clan system with kingdoms. Sotho-speakers know this period as the difaqane ("forced migration"); Zulu-speakers call it the mfecane ("crushing")...

Shaka built large armies, breaking from clan tradition by placing the armies under the control of his own officers rather than of hereditary chiefs.

He then set out on a massive programme of expansion, killing or enslaving those who resisted in the territories he conquered. His impis (warrior regiments) were rigorously disciplined: failure in battle meant death.

Peoples in the path of Shaka's armies moved out of his way, becoming in their turn aggressors against their neighbours.



This wave of displacement spread throughout southern Africa and beyond. It also accelerated the formation of several new nation-states, notably those of the Sotho (present-day Lesotho) and of the Swazi (now Swaziland).

In 1828 Shaka was killed by his half-brothers Dingaan and Umhlangana. The weaker and less-skilled Dingaan became king, relaxing military discipline while continuing the despotism. Dingaan also attempted to establish relations with the British traders on the Natal coast, but events had started to unfold that would see the demise of Zulu independence. Estimates for the death toll resulting from the Mfecane range from 1 million to 2 million...

After 1806, a number of Dutch-speaking inhabitants of the Cape Colony trekked inland, first in small groups. Eventually, in the 1830s, large numbers of Boers migrated in what came to be known as the Great Trek. Among the initial reasons for their leaving the Cape colony were the English language rule.

Religion was a very important aspect of the settlers culture and the bible and church services were in Dutch. Similarly, schools, justice and trade up to the arrival of the British, were all managed in the Dutch language. The language law caused friction, distrust and dissatisfaction.

Another reason for Dutch-speaking white farmers trekking away from the Cape was the abolition of slavery by the British government on Emancipation Day, 1 December 1838.



The farmers complained they could not replace the labour of their slaves without losing an excessive amount of money. The farmers had invested large amounts of capital in slaves. Owners who had purchased slaves on credit or put them up as surety against loans faced financial ruin.

Britain had allocated the sum of 1 200 000 British Pounds as compensation to the Dutch settlers, on condition the Dutch farmers had to lodge their claims in Britain as well as the fact that the value of the slaves was many times the allocated amount. This caused further dissatisfaction among the Dutch settlers. The settlers, incorrectly, believed that the Cape Colony administration had taken the money due to them as payment for freeing their slaves...

The South African Republic (Dutch: Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek or ZAR, not to be confused with the much later Republic of South Africa), is often referred to as The Transvaal and sometimes as the Republic of Transvaal. It was an independent and internationally recognised nation-state in southern Africa from 1852 to 1902. Independent sovereignty of the republic was formally recognised by Great Britain with the signing of the Sand River Convention on 17 January 1852.

The republic, under the premiership of Paul Kruger, defeated British forces in the First Boer War and remained independent until the end of the Second Boer War on 31 May 1902, when it was forced to surrender to the British. The territory of the South African Republic became known after this war as the Transvaal Colony.

The independent Boer republic of Orange Free State evolved from colonial Britain's Orange River Sovereignty, enforced by the presence of British troops, which lasted from 1848 to 1854 in the territory between the Orange and Vaal rivers, named Transorange. Britain, due to the military burden imposed on it by the Crimean War in Europe, then withdrew its troops from the territory in 1854, when the territory along with other areas in the region was claimed by the Boers as an independent Boer republic, which they named the Orange Free State...

The name Orange Free State was again changed to the Orange River Colony, created by Britain after the latter occupied it in 1900 and then annexed it in 1902 during the Second Boer War. The colony, with an estimated population of less than 400,000 in 1904 ceased to exist in 1910, when it was absorbed into the Union of South Africa as the Orange Free State Province...



In 1824 a party of 25 men under British Lieutenant F G Farewell arrived from the Cape Colony and established a settlement on the northern shore of the Bay of Natal, which would later become the port of Durban...The Boers accepted British annexation in 1844. Many of the Natalia Boers who refused to acknowledge British rule trekked over the Drakensberg mountains to settle in the Orange Free State and Transvaal republics...

An ill-informed British attempt to force the states of southern Africa into a British federation led to inter-ethnic tensions and the First Boer War. Meanwhile, the discovery of diamonds around Kimberley and gold in the Transvaal led to a later return to instability, particularly because they fueled the rise to power of the ambitious colonialist Cecil Rhodes. As Cape Prime Minister, Rhodes curtailed the multi-racial franchise, and his expansionist policies set the stage for the Second Boer War...

In the southeastern part of the country, the Boers and the Xhosa clashed along the Great Fish River, and in 1779 the first of nine frontier wars erupted. For nearly 100 years subsequently, the Xhosa fought the settlers sporadically, first the Boers or Afrikaners and later the British...

In the later annexation of the Zulu kingdom by imperial Britain, an Anglo-Zulu War was fought in 1879. Following Lord Carnarvon's successful introduction of federation in Canada, it was thought that similar political effort, coupled with military campaigns, might succeed with the African kingdoms, tribal areas and Boer republics in South Africa.

In 1874, Sir Henry Bartle Frere was sent to South Africa as High Commissioner for the British Empire to bring such plans into being. Among the obstacles were the presence of the independent states of the South African Republic and the Kingdom of Zululand and its army.

Frere, on his own initiative, without the approval of the British government and with the intent of instigating a war with the Zulu, had presented an ultimatum on 11 December 1878, to the Zulu king



Cetshwayo with which the Zulu king could not comply. Bartle Frere then sent Lord Chelmsford to invade Zululand. The war is notable for several particularly bloody battles, including an overwhelming victory by the Zulu at the Battle of Isandlwana, as well as for being a landmark in the timeline of imperialism in the region (Wikipedia article – History of South Africa).



The Battle of Rorke's Drift, also known as the Defence of Rorke's Drift, was a battle in the Anglo-Zulu War. The defence of the mission station of Rorke's Drift, under the command of Lieutenants John Chard of the Royal Engineers and Gonville Bromhead, immediately followed the British Army's defeat at the Battle of Isandlwana on 22 January 1879, and continued into the following day.

Just over 150 British and colonial troops successfully defended the garrison against an intense assault by 3,000 to 4,000 Zulu warriors.

The massive but piecemeal Zulu attacks on Rorke's Drift came very close to defeating the much smaller garrison, but were ultimately repelled. Eleven Victoria Crosses were awarded to the defenders, along with a number of other decorations and honours (Wikipedia article – Battle of Rorke's Drift).

Britain's eventual defeat of the Zulus, marking the end of the Zulu nation's independence, was accomplished with the assistance of Zulu collaborators who harboured cultural and political resentments against centralised Zulu authority. The British then set about establishing large sugar plantations in the area today named KwaZulu-Natal Province...

The first diamond discoveries between 1866 and 1867 were alluvial, on the southern banks of the Orange River. By 1869, diamonds were found at some distance from any stream or river, in hard rock called blue ground, later called kimberlite, after the mining town of Kimberley where the diamond diggings were concentrated. The diggings were located in an area of vague boundaries and disputed land ownership.



Claimants to the site included the South African (Transvaal) Republic, the Orange Free State Republic, and the mixed-race Griqua nation under Nicolaas Waterboer. Cape Colony Governor Sir Henry Barkly persuaded all claimants to submit themselves to a

decision of an arbitrator and so Robert W Keate, Lieutenant-Governor of Natal was asked to arbitrate. Keate awarded ownership to the Griquas. Waterboer, fearing conflict with the Boer republic of Orange Free State, subsequently asked for and received British protection. Griqualand then became a separate Crown Colony renamed Griqualand West in 1871, with a Lieutenant-General and legislative council. The Crown Colony of Griqualand West was annexed into the Cape Colony in 1877, enacted into law in 1880.

No material benefits accrued to the Griquas as a result of either colonisation or annexation; they did not receive any share of the diamond wealth generated at Kimberley. The Griqua community became subsequently dissimulated.

By the 1870s and 1880s the mines at Kimberley were producing 95% of the world's diamonds. The widening search for gold and other resources were financed by the wealth produced and the practical experience gained at Kimberley.

Revenue accruing to the Cape Colony from the Kimberley diamond diggings enabled the Cape Colony to be granted responsible government status in 1872, since it was no longer dependent on the British Treasury and hence allowing it to be fully self-governing in similar fashion to the federation of Canada, New Zealand and some of the Australian states. The wealth derived from Kimberley diamond mining, having effectively tripled the customs revenue of the Cape Colony from 1871 to 1875, also doubled its population, and allowed it to expand its boundaries and railways to the north.



In 1888, British imperialist Cecil John Rhodes co-founded De Beers Consolidated Mines at Kimberley, after buying up and amalgamating the individual claims with finance provided by the Rothschild dynasty. Abundant, cheap African labour was central to the success of Kimberley diamond mining, as it would later also be to the success of gold mining on the Witwatersrand.

It has been suggested in some academic circles that the wealth produced at Kimberley was a significant factor influencing the Scramble for Africa, in which European powers had by 1902 competed with each other in drawing arbitrary boundaries across almost the entire continent and dividing it among themselves.

The discovery of gold in February 1886 at a farm called Langlaagte on the Witwatersrand in particular precipitated a gold rush by prospectors and fortune seekers from all over the world...

Finding and extracting the deposits far below the ground called for the capital and engineering skills that would soon result in the deep-level mines of the Witwatersrand producing a quarter of the world's gold, with the "instant city" of Johannesburg arising astride the main Witwatersrand gold reef...



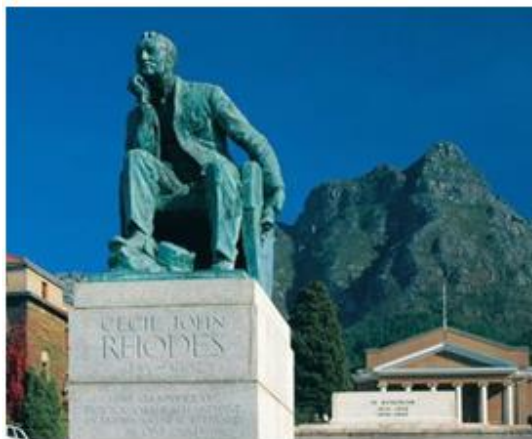
The Transvaal Boer republic was forcefully annexed by Britain in 1877, during Britain's attempt to consolidate the states of southern Africa under British rule. Long-standing Boer resentment turned into full-blown rebellion in the Transvaal and the first Anglo-Boer War, also known as the Boer Insurrection, broke out in 1880. The conflict ended almost as soon as it began with a decisive Boer victory at Battle of Majuba Hill (27 February 1881)...

The cause of the Anglo-Boer wars has been attributed to a contest over which nation would control and benefit most from the Witwatersrand gold mines (Wikipedia article – History of South Africa).

Cecil John Rhodes PC (5 July 1853 – 26 March 1902) was a British businessman, mining magnate and politician in southern Africa who served as Prime Minister of the Cape Colony from 1890 to 1896. An ardent believer in British imperialism, Rhodes and his British South Africa Company founded the southern African territory of Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe and Zambia), which the company named after him in 1895. South Africa's Rhodes University is also named after him. Rhodes set up the provisions of the Rhodes Scholarship, which is funded by his estate, and put much effort towards his vision of a Cape to Cairo Railway through British territory...

After overseeing the formation of Rhodesia during the early 1890s, he was forced to resign as Prime Minister in 1896 after the disastrous Jameson Raid, an unauthorised attack on Paul Kruger's South African Republic (or Transvaal). After Rhodes's death in 1902, at the age of 48, he was buried in the Matopos Hills in what is now Zimbabwe. At the time of his death he was already a very controversial figure.

One of Rhodes's primary motivators in politics and business was his professed belief that the Anglo-Saxon race was, to quote his will, "the first race in the world". Under the reasoning that "the more of the world we inhabit the better it is for the human race"...



Cecil Rhodes



- Diamonds and gold were discovered in South Africa in the 1860s and 1880s.
- In the 1880s British policy in South Africa was influenced by Cecil Rhodes, who had set up diamond and gold companies that had made him fabulously wealthy.
- He named the territory north of the Transvaal Rhodesia, after himself.
- Rhodes's ambitions led to his downfall in 1896.
- The British government forced him to resign as prime minister of Cape Colony after finding out he planned to overthrow the Boer government of the South African Republic without British approval.

In 1874 and 1875, the diamond fields were in the grip of depression, but Rhodes and Rudd were among those who stayed to consolidate their interests. They believed that diamonds would be numerous in the hard blue ground that had been exposed after the softer, yellow layer near the surface had been worked out. During this time, the technical problem of clearing out the water that was flooding the mines became serious. Rhodes and Rudd obtained the contract for pumping water out of the three main mines. After Rhodes returned from his first term at Oxford he lived with Robert Dundas Graham, who later became a mining partner with Rudd and Rhodes.

On 13 March 1888, Rhodes and Rudd launched De Beers Consolidated Mines after the amalgamation of a number of individual claims. With £200,000 of capital, the company, of which Rhodes was secretary, owned the largest interest in the mine (£200,000 in 1880 = £12.9m in 2004 = \$22.5m USD). Rhodes was named the chairman of De Beers at the company's founding in 1888. De Beers was established with funding from N M Rothschild & Sons Limited in 1887...

In 1890, Rhodes became Prime Minister of the Cape Colony. He introduced the Glen Grey Act to push black people from their lands and make way for industrial development. Rhodes's view was that black people needed to be driven off their land to "stimulate them to labour...It must be brought home to them", Rhodes said, "that in future nine-tenths of them will have to spend their lives in manual labour, and the sooner that is brought home to them the better."

The growing number of enfranchised black people [meaning those who had the vote] in the Cape led him to raise the franchise requirements in 1892 to counter this preponderance, with drastic effects on the traditional Cape Qualified Franchise. By simultaneously limiting the amount of land black Africans were legally allowed to hold while tripling the property qualifications required to vote, Rhodes succeeded in disenfranchising the black population, as, to quote Richard Dowden, most would now "find it almost impossible to get back on the list because of the legal limit on the amount of land they could hold"...

Rhodes would argue that "the native is to be treated as a child and denied the franchise. We must adopt a system of despotism, such as works in India, in our relations with the barbarism of South Africa"...

He often disagreed with the Transvaal government's policies, which he considered unsupportive of mine-owners' interests. In 1895, believing he could use his influence to overthrow the Boer government, Rhodes supported the infamous Jameson Raid, an attack on the Transvaal with the tacit approval of Secretary of State for the Colonies Joseph Chamberlain. The raid was a catastrophic failure. It forced Cecil Rhodes to resign as Prime Minister of the Cape Colony, sent his oldest brother Col. Frank Rhodes to jail in Transvaal convicted of high treason and nearly sentenced to death, and contributed to the outbreak of the Second Boer War...

Rhodes used his wealth and that of his business partner Alfred Beit and other investors to pursue his dream of creating a British Empire in new territories to the north by obtaining mineral concessions from the most powerful indigenous chiefs. Rhodes' competitive advantage over other mineral prospecting companies was his combination of wealth and astute political instincts, also called the 'imperial factor', as he often collaborated with the British Government...

The imperial factor was a double-edged sword: Rhodes did not want the bureaucrats of the Colonial Office in London to interfere in the Empire in Africa. He wanted British settlers and local politicians and governors to run it. This put him on a collision course with many in Britain, as well as with British missionaries, who favoured what they saw as the more ethical direct rule from London.

Rhodes prevailed because he would pay the cost of administering the territories to the north of South Africa against his future mining profits. The Colonial Office did not have enough funding for this. Rhodes promoted his business interests as in the strategic interest of Britain: preventing the Portuguese, the Germans or the Boers from moving into south-central Africa...

Rhodes had already tried and failed to get a mining concession from Lobengula, king of the Ndebele of Matabeleland. In 1888 he tried again. He sent John Moffat, son of the missionary Robert Moffat, who was trusted by Lobengula, to persuade the latter to sign a treaty of friendship with Britain, and to look favourably on Rhodes' proposals. His associate Charles Rudd, together with Francis Thompson and Rochfort Maguire, assured Lobengula that no more than ten white men would mine in Matabeleland.

This limitation was left out of the document, known as the Rudd Concession, which Lobengula signed. Furthermore, it stated that the mining companies could do anything necessary to their operations. When Lobengula discovered later the true effects of the concession, he tried to renounce it, but the British Government ignored him.

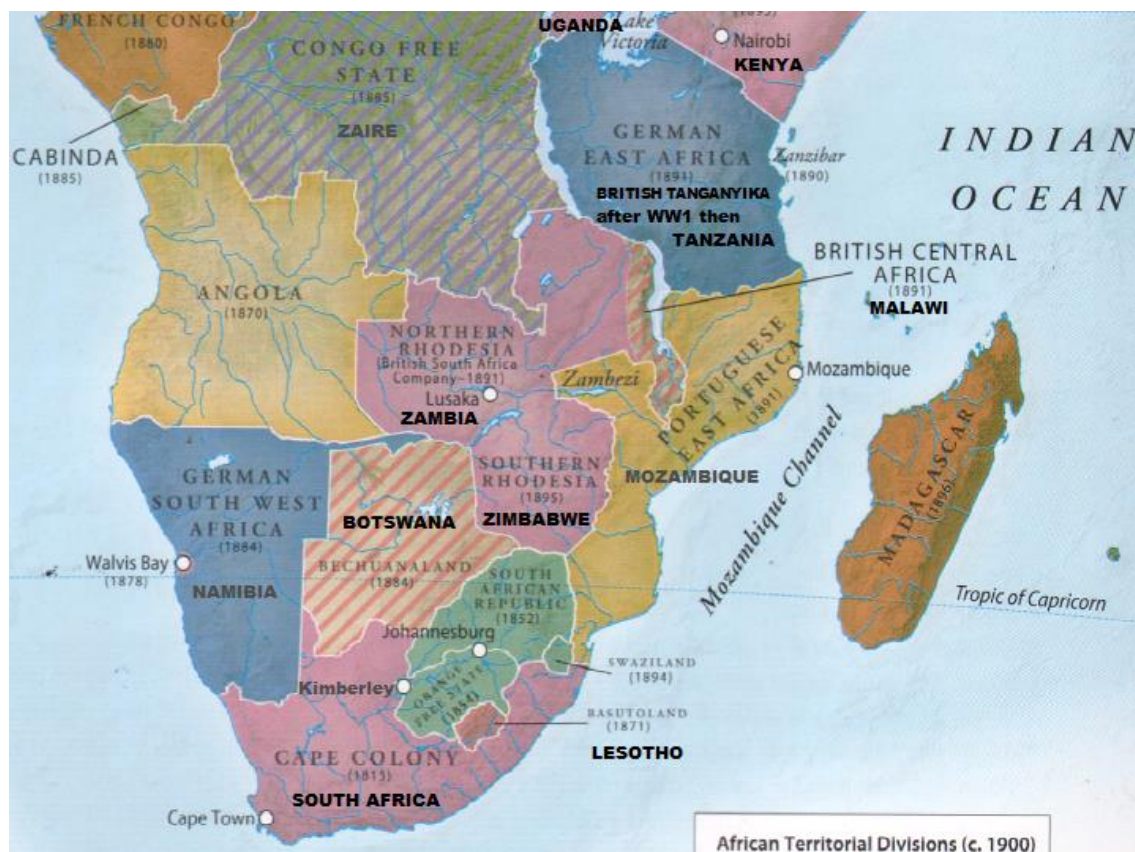
During the Company's early days, Rhodes and his associates set themselves up to make millions (hundreds of millions in current pounds) over the coming years through what has been described as a "suppressio veri ... which must be regarded as one of Rhodes's least creditable actions". Contrary to what the British government and the public had been allowed to think, the Rudd Concession was not vested in the British South Africa Company, but in a short-lived ancillary concern of Rhodes, Rudd and a few others called the Central Search Association, which was quietly formed in London in 1889.

This entity renamed itself the United Concessions Company in 1890, and soon after sold the Rudd Concession to the Chartered Company for 1,000,000 shares. When Colonial Office functionaries discovered this chicanery in 1891, they advised Secretary of State for the Colonies Knutsford to consider revoking the concession, but no action was taken.

Armed with the Rudd Concession, in 1889 Rhodes obtained a charter from the British Government for his British South Africa Company (BSAC) to rule, police, and make new treaties and concessions from the Limpopo River to the great lakes of Central Africa. He obtained further concessions and treaties north of the Zambezi, such as those in Barotseland (the Lochner Concession with King Lewanika in 1890, which was similar to the Rudd Concession); and in the Lake Mweru area (Alfred Sharpe's 1890 Kazembe concession). Rhodes also sent Sharpe to get a concession over mineral-rich Katanga, but met his match in ruthlessness: when Sharpe was rebuffed by its ruler Msiri...

Rhodes also wanted Bechuanaland Protectorate (now Botswana) incorporated in the BSAC charter. But three Tswana kings, including Khama III, travelled to Britain and won over British public opinion for it to remain governed by the British Colonial Office in London. Rhodes commented: "It is humiliating to be utterly beaten by these niggers."

The British Colonial Office also decided to administer British Central Africa (Nyasaland, today's Malawi) owing to the activism of Scots missionaries trying to end the slave trade...



The BSAC had its own police force, the British South Africa Police, which was used to control Matabeleland and Mashonaland, in present-day Zimbabwe. The company had hoped to start a "new Rand" from the ancient gold mines of the Shona.

Because the gold deposits were on a much smaller scale, many of the white settlers who accompanied the BSAC to Mashonaland [later Rhodesia then Zimbabwe] became farmers rather than miners.

When the Ndebele and the Shona—the two main, but rival, peoples—separately rebelled against the coming of the European settlers, the BSAC defeated them in the First Matabele War and Second Matabele War...

By the end of 1894, the territories over which the BSAC had concessions or treaties, collectively called "Zambesia" after the Zambezi River flowing through the middle, comprised an area of 1,143,000 km² between the Limpopo River and Lake Tanganyika. In May 1895, its name was officially changed to "Rhodesia", reflecting Rhodes' popularity among settlers who had been using the name informally since 1891.

The designation Southern Rhodesia was officially adopted in 1898 for the part south of the Zambezi, which later became Zimbabwe; and the designations North-Western and North-Eastern Rhodesia were used from 1895 for the territory which later became Northern Rhodesia, then Zambia...

One of Rhodes' dreams (and the dream of many other members of the British Empire) was for a "red line" on the map from the Cape to Cairo (on geo-political maps, British dominions were always denoted in red or pink). Rhodes had been instrumental in securing southern African states for the Empire. He and others felt the best way to "unify the possessions, facilitate governance, enable the military to move quickly to hot spots or conduct war, help settlement, and foster trade" would be to build the "Cape to Cairo Railway".



This enterprise was not without its problems. France had a rival strategy in the late 1890s to link its colonies from west to east across the continent and the Portuguese produced the "Pink Map", representing their claims to sovereignty in Africa.

Ultimately, Belgium and Germany proved to be the main obstacles to the British dream until the United Kingdom seized Tanganyika [Tanzania] from the Germans as a League of Nations mandate [after the Germans were defeated in World War 1]...

Rhodes's views on race have been debated. Critics on the left have labelled him as an "architect of apartheid" and a "white supremacist"...

However historian Raymond C. Mensing, notes that Rhodes has the reputation as the most flamboyant exemplar of the British imperial spirit, and always believed that British institutions were the best. Mensing argues that Rhodes quietly developed a more nuanced concept of imperial federation in Africa and that his mature views were more balanced and realistic. Rhodes was not a biological or maximal racist. Despite his support for what became the basis for the apartheid system, he is best seen as a cultural or minimal racist, according to Mensing...

Rhodes worked well with the Afrikaners in the Cape Colony. He supported teaching Dutch as well as English in public schools. While Prime Minister of the Cape Colony, he helped to remove most of their legal disabilities. He was a friend of Jan Hofmeyr, leader of the Afrikaner Bond, and it was largely because of Afrikaner support that he became Prime Minister of the Cape Colony. Rhodes advocated greater self-government for the Cape Colony, in line with his preference for the empire to be controlled by local settlers and politicians rather than by London (Wikipedia article – Cecil Rhodes).

Renewed tensions between Britain and the Boers peaked in 1899 when the British demanded voting rights for the 60,000 foreign whites on the Witwatersrand. Until that point, President Paul Kruger's government had excluded all foreigners from the franchise. Kruger rejected the British demand and called for the withdrawal of British

troops from the borders of the South African Republic. When the British refused, Kruger declared war.

This Second Anglo-Boer War, also known as the South African War lasted longer than the first, with British troops being supplemented by colonial troops from Southern Rhodesia, Canada, India, Australia and New Zealand. It has been estimated that the total number of British and colonial troops deployed in South Africa during the war outnumbered the population of the two Boer Republics by more than 150,000.

By June 1900, Pretoria, the last of the major Boer towns, had surrendered. Yet resistance by Boer bittereinders (meaning those who would fight to the bitter end) continued for two more years with guerrilla warfare, which the British met in turn with scorched earth tactics...

The British suffragette Emily Hobhouse visited British concentration camps in South Africa and produced a report condemning the appalling conditions there. By 1902, 26,000 Boer women and children had died of disease and neglect in the camps. The Anglo-Boer War affected all race groups in South Africa. Black people were conscripted or otherwise coerced by both sides into working for them either as combatants or non-combatants to sustain the respective war efforts of both the Boers and the British...



Emily Hobhouse campaigned against the appalling conditions of the British concentrations in South Africa, thus influencing British public opinion against the war.

From the outset of hostilities in October 1899 to the signing of peace on 31 May 1902 the war claimed the lives of 22,000 imperial soldiers and 7,000 republican fighters. In terms of the peace agreement known as the Treaty of Vereeniging, the Boer republics acknowledged British sovereignty, while the British in turn committed themselves to reconstruction of the areas under their control.

During the years immediately following the Anglo-Boer wars, Britain set about unifying the four colonies including the former Boer republics into a single self-governed country called the Union of South Africa. This was accomplished after several years of negotiations, when the South Africa Act 1909 consolidated the Cape Colony, Natal, Transvaal, and Orange Free State into one nation.

Under the provisions of the act, the Union became an independent Dominion of the British Empire, governed under a form of constitutional monarchy, with the British monarch represented by a Governor-General...The British High Commission territories of Basutoland (now Lesotho), and Bechuanaland (now Botswana), Swaziland continued under direct rule from Britain.

General Louis Botha headed the first government of the new Union, with General Jan Smuts as his deputy. Their South African National Party, later known as the South African Party or SAP, followed a generally pro-British, white-unity line. The more radical Boers split away under the leadership of General Barry Hertzog, forming the National Party (NP) in 1914. The National Party championed Afrikaner interests, advocating separate development for the two white groups, and independence from Britain.

Dissatisfaction with British influence in the Union's affairs reached a climax in September 1914, when impoverished Boers, anti-British Boers and bitter-enders launched a rebellion. The rebellion was suppressed, and at least one officer was sentenced to death and executed by firing squad.

In 1924 the Afrikaner-dominated National Party came to power in a coalition government with the Labour Party. Afrikaans, previously regarded as a low-level Dutch patois, replaced Dutch as an official language of the Union. English and Dutch became the two official languages in 1925.

The Union of South Africa came to an end after a referendum on 5 October 1960, during which, a majority of white South Africans voted in favour of unilateral withdrawal from the British Commonwealth and the establishment of a Republic of South Africa...

From 1948, successive National Party administrations formalised and extended the existing system of racial discrimination and denial of human rights into the legal system of apartheid, which lasted until 1991. A key act of legislation during this time was the Homeland Citizens Act of 1970. This act augmented the Native Land Act of 1913 through the establishment of so-called "homelands" or "reserves".



It authorised the forced evictions of thousands of African people from urban centres in South Africa and South West Africa (now Namibia) to what became described colloquially as "Bantustans" or the "original homes", as they were officially referred to, of the black tribes of South Africa. The same legislation applied also to South West Africa over which South Africa had continued after World War I to exercise a disputed League of Nations mandate. Apartheid apologists attempted to justify the "homelands" policy by citing the 1947 partition of India, when the British had done much the same thing without arousing international condemnation.

The dissolution of the Soviet Union in the late-1980s meant the African National Congress (ANC) in alliance with the South African Communist Party, could no longer depend on the Soviet Union for weaponry and political support.

It also meant the apartheid government could no longer link apartheid and its purported legitimacy to the protection of Christian values and civilisation in the face of the rooi gevaar, meaning "red danger" or the threat of communism. Both sides were forced to the negotiating table, with the result that in June 1991, all apartheid laws were finally rescinded - opening the way for the country's first multiracial democratic elections three years later.

It was the culmination of mounting local and international opposition to apartheid in the 1980s, including the armed struggle, widespread civil unrest, economic and cultural sanctions by the international community, and pressure from the anti-apartheid movement around the world, State President FW de Klerk announced the lifting of the ban on the African National Congress, the Pan Africanist Congress and the South African Communist Party, as well as the release of political prisoner Nelson Mandela on 2 February 1990, after twenty-seven years in prison. In a referendum held on 17 March 1992, the white electorate voted 68% in favour of democracy...

The ANC had risen to power on the strength of a socialist agenda embodied in a Freedom Charter, which was intended to form the basis of ANC social, economic and political policies. The Charter decreed that "the national wealth of our country, the heritage of South Africans, shall be restored to the people; the mineral wealth beneath the soil, the banks and monopoly industry shall be transferred to the ownership of the people".

ANC icon Nelson Mandela, asserted in a statement released on 25 January 1990: "The nationalisation of the mines, banks and monopoly industries is the policy of the ANC, and a change or modification of our views in this regard is inconceivable." But, after the ANC's electoral victory in 1994, the eradication of mass poverty through nationalisation was never implemented. The ANC-led government, in a historic reversal of policy, adopted neoliberalism instead.

A wealth tax on the super-rich to fund developmental projects was set aside, while domestic and international corporations, enriched by apartheid, were excused from any financial reparations. Large corporations were allowed to shift their main listings abroad. According to a leading South African economics expert, the government's concessions to big business represented "treacherous decisions that [will] haunt South Africa for generations to come" (Wikipedia article – History of South Africa).

The following is an article by Dan Roodt that appeared in the The New Observer (Jan 17, 2016) entitled "Blacks are not 'indigenous' and arrived at same time as whites in South Africa":

The recent uproar in South Africa over the claims by ANC president Jacob Zuma that the 1913 Land Act dispossessed blacks is a blatant lie, and forms part of four core lies about South African history, a New Observer correspondent Yochanan has written.

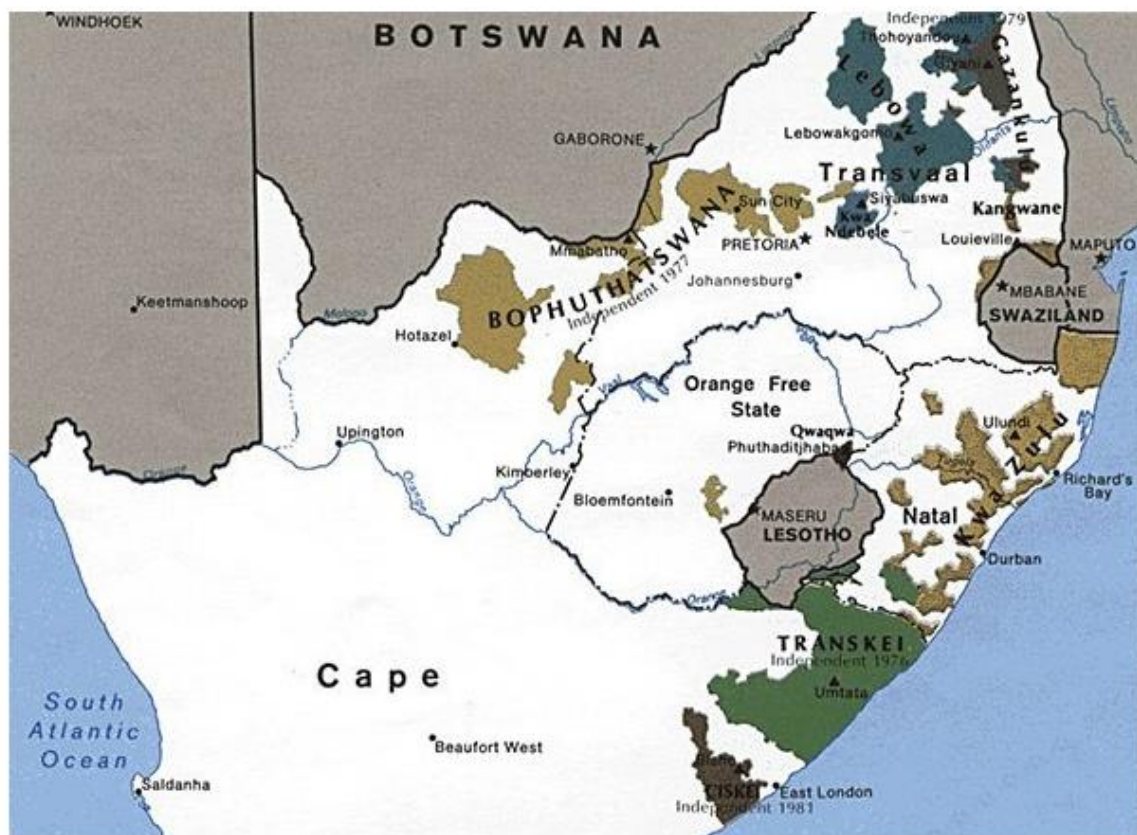
Submitted in the comment section of this newspaper, Yochanan's remarks are so pertinent that they deserve greater publicity:

LIE NUMBER ONE: There is a common belief in South Africa that the Natives Land Act of 1913 shoved blacks on reserves ('7 percent of the land') and 'prohibited them from buying land in white areas'.

That 'whites forcibly removed blacks to these reserves and that these reserves were on the worst land in the country with no mineral riches and that whites kept all the best land and minerals for themselves'.

Now if I was a black man, I would probably also want to believe that myth, because it would ensure me eternal victimhood status and compensation for generations to come.

Unfortunately, it is a blatant lie and can be attributed to the lack of reading ability or legal comprehension of the journalists and historians of our time.



Black tribal areas, secured, not defined, by the 1913 Land Act.

THE TRUTH: First of all, the biggest Platinum reserves in the world run through the former Black homeland of Bophuthatswana (North West province).

The former Nationalist government had no problem allocating this area to the Tswana tribes for self-rule—although they already had a massive country called Botswana given to them by the British. It was originally part of South Africa, called Bechuanaland.

Blacks further got another two massive countries from the British called Lesotho and Swaziland. There goes their 7 percent.

LIE NUMBER TWO: 'Black homelands were on the worst land in South Africa'.

THE TRUTH: When one compares the rainfall map of South Africa and anybody with elementary knowledge of South Africa will tell you that the largest part of South Africa is called the Karoo. It is a semi desert comparable to Arizona or Nevada in the USA.

Blacks never even entered this area let alone settled it. Whites made it blossom and created successful sheep farms producing meat of world quality.

Black "settlements" are found on the north and east coast of South Africa. The East Coast has a sub-tropical climate and the north a prairie-like climate with summer rainfall and thunderstorms. An exception to this is the Western Cape with a Mediterranean climate and winter rainfall.

The northern and eastern part of South Africa with its beautiful green grasslands and fertile soil is where the blacks eventually coalesced and this is the land they chose for themselves. Their eventual homelands were found on the land they inhabited out of their own free will.

The Afrikaners even have a song praising the greenness of Natal, called "Groen is die land van Natal" (Green is the land of Natal). It was perfect grazing area for the cattle herding blacks.

LIE NUMBER THREE: 'Blacks are indigenous to South Africa and first settled it'.

THE TRUTH: Today Blacks in South Africa often tell Afrikaners and other minorities such as the Coloureds, Indians, Chinese or Jews to adapt to their misrule and corruption or "Go Home"...implying that we, who have been born here, who hold legal citizenship through successive birthrights; should emigrate to Europe, Malaysia, India or Israel. That the only ones who have a legal claim to South Africa, all of it, are the blacks. Blacks believe that they are 'indigenous to South Africa'—but they are not: it was proven by DNA research. We are ALL settlers in South Africa.

All South Africans are settlers, regardless of their skin colour, and their DNA carries the proof. So says Dr Wilmot James, head of the African Genome Project, a distinguished academic, sociologist and, more recently, honorary professor of human genetics at the University of Cape Town.

Where is the archaeological proof that blacks 'settled' South Africa?

Apart from a few scattered archaeological remains found of black culture in the far northern Transvaal prior to 1652, it is generally agreed that blacks and whites were contemporary settlers of South Africa.

I use the term "Settler" loosely, because blacks never 'settled' South Africa; their presence was nomadic. Blacks were itinerants who travelled from place to place with no fixed home.

Whole capital "cities" of grass huts could be moved if grazing was exhausted. They had no demarcated areas, no fences, no borders, no maps, no title deeds to proof ownership of any land apart from a verbal claim and mutual understanding that their temporary presence in a certain area in a certain period of time constituted "ownership" of the land.

They left behind no foundations of buildings, no statues, no roads, no rock paintings, not a single proof of "settlement" of the land prior to the whites settling South Africa.

The only rock paintings were made by the Bushmen and the Hottentots (Khoi-Khoi and San) in the caves they temporarily occupied. Blacks were pastoral-nomads and the Bushmen/Hottentots were hunter-gatherer-nomads.

Whites, on the other hand, built cities, railroads, dams and a first world country comparable to the best in Europe and the new world...their legacy speaks of a people who intended to live there for a thousand years, if not eternity.

To claim that 'the whole of Africa belongs to Blacks' is absurd. It is like an Italian claiming the whole of Europe belongs to Italians, including Norway.

In fact, the pyramids of Egypt are proof of white settlement going back thousands of years—and also the Phoenicians settling Carthage and the Greeks settling Alexandria.

The Arabs settled North Africa soon after the Prophet Mohammed died and the whites settled Southern Africa from 1652 onwards. Today there are three Africas as Dr. Eschel Rhoodie calls it in his book "The Third Africa" (1968)... Arabic up north, Black in the centre and Whites at the south...

The white settlers of the Cape first came face to face with the Bantu around 1770 on the banks of the Great Fish River, 120 years after Van Riebeeck came to the Cape and 1000 km east of Cape Town.

LIE NUMBER FOUR: Whites created black reserves and homelands.

THE TRUTH: Blacks created the homelands themselves, thanks to Shaka Zulu. The common belief is that the 'black tribes at the time were all living peacefully and in the spirit of 'Ubuntu' with each other in a virtual liberal paradise'.

Nothing could be further from the truth. Shaka-Zulu was a genocidal maniac who wiped out some two million black people in the Defeqane ("great scattering").

The Zulu tyrant Shaka, at the time was committing genocide against other tribes. The Swazis and the Ndebeles fled back north in the direction of central Africa where they migrated from.

The Sothos fled into the mountains of what is today, Lesotho. The rest of the smaller tribes huddled together trying to find strength in coalescing.

That is the history of black South Africans that blacks prefer to ignore... that blacks drove other blacks off their land, not whites.

It is into this maelstrom of black chaos that the Boers trekked in 1838. As far as they went they found large open sections of country uninhabited by anyone.

Black tribes fleeing Shaka's carnage grouped themselves into areas finding protection in concentrated numbers.

This is how Sir Theophilus Shepstone later found the remnants of black refugees huddled together on self-created reserves. He just demarcated it in order to protect them from each other.

The creators of the Bantustans were not the Boers or the whites, it was a black man called Shaka.

Australia

Australia has been one of those nations that has contributed to fulfilling that prophecy that Ephraim would become a commonwealth of nations (Genesis 48:19). It is from these promises of national greatness to the British people that is the strongest argument for the land of Australia being titled by God to the British people who colonised Australia.

The native people that originally inhabited Australia were the dark skinned Aboriginal people who have survived to this day. If Australia was titled to the British descended people who colonised Australia then where is the land titled to the Aboriginal people and could even part of the great continent of Australia perhaps be their land inheritance according to God?

The Aboriginal people are anthropologically very similar to the Pre-Dravidian people of southern India and Sri Lanka. Famous Sri Lankan singer Kamahl is a case of someone from the subcontinent who would easily pass off as an Aboriginal. In fact, he did play an Aboriginal in the 1960's TV series "Skippy, the Bush Kangaroo".

One possibility for where God's land inheritance is for the Aboriginal people is Sri Lanka and southern India where their original ancestors probably came from. That said, could a case be made for part of Australia also being part of their land inheritance according to God?

Wikipedia states that in pre-colonial times that the Aboriginal population of Australia (estimated around to be close to 1 million people in the 1700's – article "History of Indigenous Australians") was concentrated mostly in northern Queensland. Queensland's Aboriginal population at that time was double that of NSW and 6 times that of Victoria. This syncs in well with an important point that has been made earlier that God has directed the darker skinned peoples towards the hotter, tropical parts of the world and that is where their land inheritances are to be found according to God.

Of all the lands that became white dominions within the British Empire the one that was closest to the equator was the northern part of Australia.

Australia's top end is within 10 degrees of the equator and Queensland has one of the highest skin cancer rates in the world due to the number of white people living in tropical areas.



Aboriginal skin is far better suited to living in places like Darwin and far North Queensland so a reasonable case could be made for some of Australia's Top End possibly being the land inheritance of the Aboriginal people according to God.

That said, one argument against this reasoning are some of the extraordinary natural resources in the Top End of Australia, the principle resources being vast bauxite reserves used for making aluminium as well as uranium in the Northern Territory. Such natural wealth is likely to have been decreed to the British descended people as part of the birthright promises of great natural wealth.

In his excellent book "In Search of...The Origin of Nations" biblical historian Craig White gives the following information regarding the origins of the Australian Aborigines:

The Aborigines do not only look very similar to the Pre-Dravidians or Veddah, but their blood groups are common to both. The Veddah, in turn, are similar to the Sakai, Negritos and even in a few respects, according to Hulse, the Africans.

Further, there is an underlying unity of Austro-Asiatic and Austronesian languages: from the Himalayas to Easter Island, and from Hawaii to Madagascar. Why this, if there were no connection between these peoples anciently?

Today there are four main black groups in Australia, comprising over 500 tribes and sub-tribes:

1. **Barrineans** — these are not Aborigines, but are a people of Negritoe/Papuan stock who lived in the rain forests of northern Queensland. The extinct Tasmanians were also Papuan. These, together with the extinct pygmy element, are the firstcomers to Australia.

2. Next came the **Murrayian Aborigines** who dwell mainly along the coastal regions of eastern, southern and western Australia. In some respects they are similar to the Ainu. Could the Murrayians be partly descended of Sinite and partly of Cush? Their skins are very slightly lighter and hair straighter than the Carpentarian Aborigines. In some respects they resemble the eastern Polynesians.

3. Lastly came the **Carpentarian Aborigines** who are undoubtedly related to the Vedda of southern India. They occupy central and northern Australia and are darker than the Murrayians. Their hair is curlier as well.

4. **Torres Strait Islanders** — these are also not Aborigines, but linguistically and physically are Papuans (Melanesians) who have infiltrated into the Cape York peninsula region.

The Australian Aboriginal peoples describe the creation of man thus:

"In the beginning the world lay quiet, in utter darkness. There was no vegetation, no living or moving thing on the bare bones of the mountains. The world was not dead, it was asleep."

They then describe how light manifest itself upon the earth. Man was created "in the bodily and mental form of the Baime ... the Father-God, the Great Spirit".

This roughly accords with the Bible record that man was created in God's image both physically and mentally (compare Genesis 1:26-27). In another tradition we have an account vaguely similar to the Bible story. We find the following in Aboriginal Stories by A.W. Reed:

".. the Australian blacks in the neighbourhood of Melbourne said that Pund-jel, the Creator, cut three large sheets of bark with his big knife. On one of these he placed some clay and worked it up with his knife into a proper consistence. He then laid a portion of the clay on one the other pieces of bark and shaped it into a human form ... [He] blew his breath hard into their mouths, their noses, and their navels".

He was so pleased with His creation that He danced with joy.

There is definitely some resemblance to the Biblical story of the creation of man in the story and this is further indication of the migration of the Aborigines from the Middle East to Australia via Pakistan, South India, the Indonesian Islands, before settling in the Great Land of the South.

In another creation story the following has been relayed down the generations which also connects with the creation account of Genesis 1:

"And again like the Lord God, Baime walked on the earth he had made, among the plants and animals, and created man and woman to rule over them. He fashioned them from the dust of the ridgess, and said 'These are the plants you shall eat — and these and these...'"

So much for them evolving on this continent 40,000 years ago.

The Aborigines of the head waters of the Murray River, like many peoples, have legends of the flood of Noah. They believe that they are alive today because of a man and his wife

staying alive on a canoe while all other people drowned. One tradition of the flood centres around Nowulu Island. "Nowulu" could be a corruption of "Noah" while another speaks of the whole country being under water. And the Aborigines of Western Australia claim that the Creation took place across the ocean, in the west. How true, and how accurate.

Several items should be mentioned during the course of this study, as they have a strong bearing on tracing the origin of the Aborigines. Let us first turn our attention to the boomerang or throwing wood. From where did it spring? Figuier (1893) writes:

"The chief weapons of the Australian are the waddy, a large club, and the boomerang... One of the chief weapons depicted on the walls of the tombs of the ancient Thebian kings [of central Egypt] is now believed to be a boomerang, and the use of this weapon amongst the Dravidian hill tribes of India is still known. It is curious that Professor Huxley ... classifies the ancient Egyptians, the Dravidian hill tribes, and the Australian Aborigines together in one race."

The boomerang was first found along the Nile. Professor Childe states that the Australian Aboriginal received it from Egypt. It would be impossible to develop the boomerang independently in two remote areas of the world. The Australoid-looking Vedda of South India, too used the boomerang...

Further, the dingo dog has long been associated with the Aborigines. Where do the dingoes come from? From the Middle East, and in particular the area around Syria near Iraq, where Babel was according to specialists. The nearest dog tribes to the dingo today are in Syria, not Austronesia as one would expect...

"It has been suggested that the Mungo and Kow Swamp people represent two separate migrations to Australia. Much more recently the presence of the dingo (and other possible indications in technology) may indicate the arrival of additional people in the Holocene ... The arrival of the dingo may be correlated with other evidence of cultural change around 3,000-5,000 years ago ...

"The greatest cultural changes to have taken place throughout Australia have occurred since the mid-Holocene (ie in the past 5,000 years) and especially during the past 3,000 years ... it has also been argued that there was a major increase in the painting of rock art sites during the last 3,000 years or so." (The Encyclopaedia of Aboriginal Australia, vol 1)...

The reader will recall that it was mentioned how that Herodotus claimed that the peoples of the Colchis, the Ethiopians and the Egyptians practiced circumcision. So do the Aborigines. Surely this represents another proof of their true origin in the Near East? (p.132-137)



A Luritja man demonstrating method of attack with boomerang under cover of shield (1920)

The Wikipedia article "History of Australia" makes the following comments regarding the discovery and exploration of "New Holland" as the continent was originally named by the Dutch:

The Dutch East India Company ship, Duyfken, led by Willem Janszoon, made the first documented European landing in Australia in 1606 [near Weipa on the Cape York Peninsula].

That same year, a Spanish expedition sailing in nearby waters and led by Portuguese navigator Pedro Fernandes de Queirós had landed in the New Hebrides...Later that year [1606], Queirós' deputy Luís Vaz de Torres sailed to the north of Australia through Torres Strait, along New Guinea's southern coast.

Dutch explorer Frederick de Houtman discovered extensive coral reefs off the coast of Western Australia in 1619, naming them Houtman Abrolhos, abrolhos being a Portuguese word meaning 'look out'. This warning however did not prevent the loss of several ships, most notably the Batavia in 1629.

The Dutch, following shipping routes to the Dutch East Indies, or in search of gold, spices or Christian converts, proceeded to contribute a great deal to Europe's knowledge of Australia's coast. In 1616, Dirk Hartog, sailing off course, en route from the Cape of Good Hope to Batavia, landed on an island off Shark Bay, West Australia.

In 1622–23 the Leeuwin made the first recorded rounding of the south west corner of the continent, and gave her name to Cape Leeuwin.

In 1627 the south coast of Australia was accidentally discovered by François Thijssen and named 't Land van Pieter Nuyts, in honour of the highest ranking passenger, Pieter Nuyts, extraordinary Councillor of India [Thijssen charted most of the western half of Australia's southern coastline and two islands he charted off the South Australian coast became the inspiration for the islands described in the novel Gulliver's Travels].

In 1628 a squadron of Dutch ships was sent by the Governor-General of the Dutch East Indies Pieter de Carpentier to explore the northern coast. These ships made extensive examinations, particularly in the Gulf of Carpentaria, named in honour of de Carpentier.



Melchisedech Thevenot (1620?–1692): map of New Holland 1644, based on a map by the Dutch cartographer Joan Blaeu

Abel Tasman's voyage of 1642 was the first known European expedition to reach Van Diemen's Land (later Tasmania) and New Zealand, and to sight Fiji.

On his second voyage of 1644, he also contributed significantly to the mapping of Australia proper, making observations on the land and people of the north coast below New Guinea...With the exception of further Dutch visits to the west, however, Australia remained largely unvisited by Europeans until the first British explorations.

British navigator Captain Cook after visiting Tahiti on his first voyage opened his secret instructions and was ordered to seek out the fabled lost continent of Terra Australis in the South Pacific. Captain Cook did not consider Australia (New Holland) to be the lost continent of Terra Australis. Cook wrote:

As to a Southern Continent, I do not believe any such thing exists, unless in a high latitude [near the South Pole].

On March 31, 1770 he wrote:

It was resolved to return by way of the East Indies [Indonesia] by the following route: upon leaving this coast [New Zealand] to steer westward until we fall in with the east coast of New Holland and then to follow the direction of that coast to the northward.

Cook had the choice to go back via the bottom of South America but the timing may have not been conducive for battling the fierce storms around Cape Horn another time.

After sighting Cape Howe Cook sailed up the east coast of Australia. Cook made four landings going up the coast, one of which was unplanned – Botany Bay, the town of 1770, Cooktown (after the Endeavour struck coral and had to be repaired) and Possession Island in the Torres Strait from which he claimed the east coast of “New Holland” for Great Britain which was named New South Wales.

In its article “Australian Frontier Wars” Wikipedia makes the following comments:

Cook, in his voyage up the east coast of Australia, observed no signs of agriculture or other development by its inhabitants. Some historians argue that under prevailing European law such land was deemed terra nullius or land belonging to nobody or land 'empty of inhabitants' (as defined by Emerich de Vattel). Cook claimed the east coast of the continent for Britain on 23 August 1770.



Lieutenant James Cook was the first European to achieve contact with the eastern coastline of Australia in 1770.

In his secret orders Captain Cook was advised the following regarding relations with the native peoples and claiming territory for Great Britain:

You are likewise to observe the genius, temper, disposition and number of the natives, if there be any and endeavour by all proper means to **cultivate a friendship and alliance with them.**

You are also with the **consent of the natives to take possession of convenient situations in the country** in the name of the King of Great Britain.

Was Cook defying his order when he deemed the land to be “terra nullius” taking possession without the “consent of the natives?” He certainly reported to his superiors that there were native inhabitants in the land so his superiors who gave him his orders knew the land wasn’t empty of inhabitants.

It is highly likely that the European view of land ownership at the time involved cultivating the land as that was the means it was deemed that a people took possession of the land. Since the Aboriginals did not grow crops, as best as Cook could tell, they were only living off the land rather than taking possession of the land. Cook himself had a respect for the Aboriginal people and had kind words to say in his journal about the Aboriginal people who had helped them in the Cooktown area when the Endeavour had to be repaired.

It should also be noted in his secret instructions that when it came to claiming land for the king with the consent of the natives that it involved taking “**possession of convenient situations in the country**”. The intent stated here was of peaceful co-existence with the natives and taking ownership of **part** of the country rather than wholesale conquest of all the land as portrayed by politically correct historians.

Wikipedia in its article “The History of Australia” says the following about the colonisation of Australia:

The American Revolutionary War (1775–1783) saw Britain lose most of its North American colonies and consider establishing replacement territories. In 1779 Sir Joseph Banks, the eminent scientist who had accompanied James Cook on his 1770 voyage, recommended Botany Bay as a suitable site for settlement, saying that "it was not to be doubted that a Tract of Land such as New Holland, which was larger than the whole of Europe, would furnish Matter of advantageous Return."

Under Banks' guidance, the American Loyalist James Matra, who had also travelled with Cook, produced "A Proposal for Establishing a Settlement in New South Wales" (23 August 1783), proposing the establishment of a colony composed of American Loyalists, Chinese and South Sea Islanders (but not convicts).

Matra reasoned that: the country was suitable for plantations of sugar, cotton and tobacco; New Zealand timber and hemp or flax could prove valuable commodities; it could form a base for Pacific trade; and it could be a suitable compensation for displaced American Loyalists. Following an interview with Secretary of State Lord Sydney in 1784, Matra amended his proposal to include convicts as settlers, considering that this would benefit both "Economy to the Publick, & Humanity to the Individual".

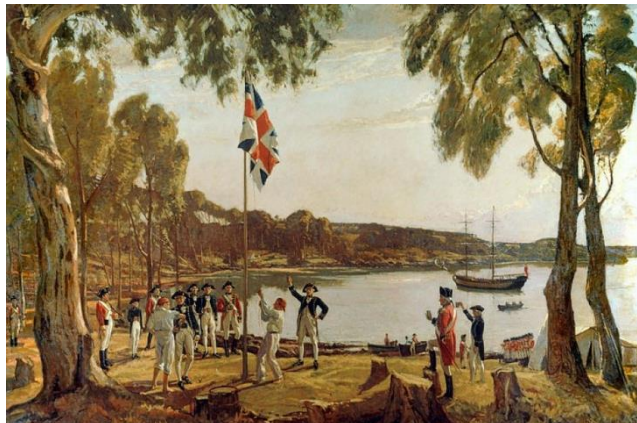
Matra's plan provided the original blueprint for settlement. Records show the government was considering it in 1784. The London newspapers announced in November 1784 that: "A plan has been presented to the [Prime] Minister, and is now before the Cabinet, for instituting a new colony in New Holland. In this vast tract of land....every sort of produce and improvement of which the various soils of the earth are capable, may be expected"...

Penal transportation was already well-established as a central plank of English criminal law and until the American Revolution about a thousand criminals per year were sent to Maryland and Virginia. It served as a powerful deterrent to law-breaking...

In 1933, Sir Ernest Scott, stated the traditional view of the reasons for colonisation: "It is clear that the only consideration which weighed seriously with the Pitt Government was the immediately pressing and practical one of finding a suitable place for a convict settlement"...

The British colony of New South Wales was established with the arrival of the First Fleet of 11 vessels under the command of Captain Arthur Phillip in January 1788...Governor Phillip was vested with complete authority over the inhabitants of the colony.

Enlightened for his Age, Phillip's personal intent was to establish harmonious relations with local Aboriginal people and try to reform as well as discipline the convicts of the colony.



Phillip and several of his officers—most notably Watkin Tench—left behind journals and accounts of which tell of immense hardships during the first years of settlement...Between 1788 and 1792, convicts and their gaolers made up the majority of the population—but after this, a population of emancipated convicts began to grow who could be granted land and these people pioneered a non-government private sector economy and were later joined by soldiers whose military service had expired—and finally, free settlers who began arriving from Britain. Governor Phillip departed the colony for England on 11 December 1792, with the new settlement having survived near starvation and immense isolation for four years...

In the Wikipedia article "The Historiography of the British Empire" it notes:

At the suggestion of Secretary of State Lord Sydney, Matra amended his proposal to include convicts as settlers, considering that this would benefit both "Economy to the Publick, & Humanity to the Individual". The government adopted the basics of Matra's plan in 1784, and funded the settlement of convicts.

London emphasized Australia's purpose as a penal colony, and the East India Company was hostile to potential commercial rivals.

Nevertheless, says Roe, the founders of Australia showed a keen interest in whaling, sealing, sheep raising, mining and other opportunities for trade. In the long run, he says, commerce was the main stimulus for colonization.

In its article "Australian Frontier Wars" Wikipedia makes the following comments on the relations between the British colonists and the Aboriginal people:

In 1770 a British expedition under the command of then-Lieutenant James Cook made the first voyage by Europeans along the Australian east coast. On 29 April Cook and a small landing party fired on a group of Tharawal people who sought to prevent the British from landing near their camp at Botany Bay, by Cook described as "a small village". **Two Tharawal men made threatening gestures and a stone was thrown to underline that the whites were not welcome to land at that spot.**

Cook then ordered "a musket to be fired with small-shot" and the elder of the two was hit in a leg. This caused the two Tharawal men to run to their huts and seize their spears and shields. Subsequently, a single spear was thrown at the whites which "happily hurt nobody". This then caused Cook to order "a third musket with small-shots" to be fired, "upon which one of them threw another lance and both immediately ran away."

Cook did not make further contact with the Tharawal, but later established a peaceful relationship with the Kokobujundji people when his ship, HM Bark Endeavour, had to be repaired at present-day Cooktown...

The British Government decided to establish a prison colony in Australia in 1786. Under the European legal doctrine of terra nullius, Indigenous Australians were not recognised as having property rights and territory could be acquired through 'original occupation' rather than conquest or consent.

The colony's Governor, Captain Arthur Phillip, was instructed to "live in amity and kindness" with Indigenous Australians and sought to avoid conflict...



More settlers as well as Indigenous Australians were killed on the Queensland frontier than any other Australian colony. The reason is simple, and is reflected in all evidence and sources dealing with this subject: There were more Aborigines in Queensland...

Violence between Indigenous Australians and Europeans began **several months** after the First Fleet established Sydney on 26 January 1788. The local Indigenous people became suspicious when the British began to clear land and catch fish, and in May 1788 five convicts were killed and an Indigenous man was wounded.

The British grew increasingly concerned when groups of up to three hundred Indigenous people were sighted at the outskirts of the settlement in June. **Despite this, Phillip attempted to avoid conflict, and forbade reprisals after being speared in 1790.** He did, however, authorise two punitive expeditions in December 1790 after his huntsman **was killed by an Indigenous warrior named Pemulwuy**, but neither was successful.

Left wing political correctness advocates use emotive language in describing Australia Day (January 26) as “Invasion Day”. Such left wing liberals are not interested in the truth whichever way it goes but their own extreme interpretation of history.

The British were not intending to “invade” Australia when they sent the First Fleet. They were primarily interested in dumping criminals and their initial plans were just using Sydney as a jail. The soldiers that were sent were to keep control of the prisoners, not to conquer the native peoples.

Governor Phillip’s instructions explicitly stated that he was to “live in amity and kindness” with Indigenous Australians.

It was true that he ordered the kidnapping of Bennelong but this was after the frustration of trying to make contact and build relations with the local Eora Aboriginal people yielded no success. In its article on Bennelong Wikipedia says:

Bennelong...was captured...in December 1789 as part of Phillip's plan to learn the language and customs of the local people. Bennelong stayed in the settlement for about six months. He then escaped...but renewed contact with Phillip as a free man. About three months after his escape, he organised for Phillip to visit Manly where Phillip was speared in the shoulder.



He maintained ongoing good relations with the colony and in a gesture of kinship, gave Phillip the Aboriginal name Wolawaree. He learned to speak English. In 1790, the governor built him a hut on what became known as Bennelong Point (now occupied by the Sydney Opera House).

Bennelong and another Aboriginal man named Yemmerrawanne (or Imeerawanyee) travelled with Phillip on Atlantic to England in 1792. Bennelong arrived back in Sydney on 7 September 1795...

He returned to a respected position in the colony, advising Governor Hunter as he had advised and educated Phillip, and also returned to a prominent position in Eora political and cultural life. He frequently participated in payback battles, and officiated at ceremonies, including the last recorded initiation ceremony in Port Jackson in 1797.

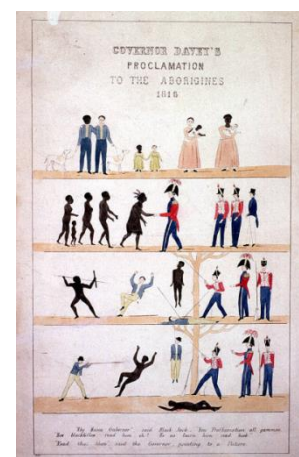
In a WA Today column “Inconvenient fact: Native title can only exist if Australia was settled, not invaded” Sherry Sufi writes:

Phillip once forgave a native for stealing his shovel because he understood that in native culture people shared what they had and there was no concept of exclusive personal belongings. Hardly the attitude of an invader.

In 1816, Governor Lachlan Macquarie appointed native leaders to act as conduits between settlers and natives. He welcomed the natives who aspired to be part of the new colony. Hardly the attitude of an invader.

Violent clashes were the exception, not the norm.

At Myall Creek in 1838, some 30 natives were killed by 10 settlers and an African in Bingara, New South Wales.



The perpetrators were trialled, 7 of the 11 involved were found guilty of murder, and hanged. The rule of law prevailed. Hardly what happens in invaded countries.

Any careful reading of Sydney's penal colony history shows that there was a genuine attempt by the leadership of the colony at peaceful co-existence with the Aboriginal people. What brought the ire of the local Aboriginal people was months **after** "Australia Day" when land was cleared and much fish was caught which might negatively impact on the food and resources available to the local Aboriginals.

In some cases, such as with Pemulwuy, the Aboriginals killed first rather than try and negotiate with the colonists so there were times when the Aboriginals killed first and were at fault according to God's law.

While the governor did his best to maintain good relations the officers under him were not all of such noble character. In time there was much greed for new land and the Aboriginals to them were just in the road but as noted above such events have nothing to do with the date of January 26.

I personally see no need to change the date of Australia Day from January 26 but neither am I opposed to the date changing to some other day for better national harmony on the issue so long as the date is the anniversary of some other appropriate event. Even before political correctness became such a force in our country I thought the date of Captain Cook's landing in Botany Bay would be a better date than the date of the start of a goal colony.

Ideally Australia Day should be the day Australia became a federated nation independent of Britain in 1901 however this clashes with New Years Day (January 1) which already has a public holiday.

One sensible suggestion I've heard for a new date for Australia Day is to celebrate it on the date that our national parliament was first opened in the Royal Exhibition Hall in Melbourne on March 9, 1901 a couple of months after the Federation of Australia.

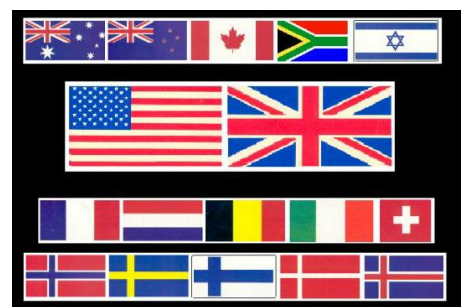


The same liberals agitating for a change to the date of Australia Day are also agitating for a change of Australia's flag and ditching the Union Jack. Regardless of how multi-racial our nation has become, historically the nation was primarily built by those of Anglo-Saxon stock. This is a fact of history that is indisputable and we should definitely continue to honour that even as we also appreciate the positive contributions made by those from all other different ethnic peoples to the great nation of Australia.

Some may question why Australia's flag doesn't have the national colours of green and gold but has the colours of red, white and blue. It did concern me when I was young but after learning about who the modern descendants of the lost tribes of Israel are I have come to have a deeper appreciation for the colours and design of our Australian flag.

Red, white and blue are the colours on most of the flags of those nations descended from Israel. Britain, America, France, the Netherlands and most of the Scandinavian countries all have red, white and blue.

Those are the family colours of Israel and those colours remind us of the greater family that Australia is a part of, even beyond the British commonwealth.



The red symbolises the blood of the covenant, the blue symbolises law and royalty and the white symbolises righteousness. The Israeli flag only has blue and white. This is ironic considering the Jews do not recognise Jesus as the Messiah whose blood was shed for our sins.

I quote again from Wikipedia and its article “Australian Frontier Wars” on the relations between the British colonists and the Aboriginal people:

During the 1790s and early 19th century the British established small settlements along the Australian coastline. These settlements initially occupied small amounts of land, and there was little conflict between the settlers and Indigenous peoples. Fighting broke out when the settlements expanded, however, disrupting traditional Indigenous food-gathering activities...

Indeed, whilst the reactions of the Aboriginal inhabitants to the sudden arrival of British settlers were varied, they became inevitably hostile when their presence led to competition over resources, and to the occupation of their lands. European diseases decimated Indigenous populations, and the occupation or destruction of lands and food resources sometimes led to starvation.

By and large neither the Europeans nor the Indigenous peoples approached the conflict in an organised sense, with the conflict more one between groups of settlers and individual tribes rather than systematic warfare, even if at times it did involve British soldiers and later formed mounted police units.

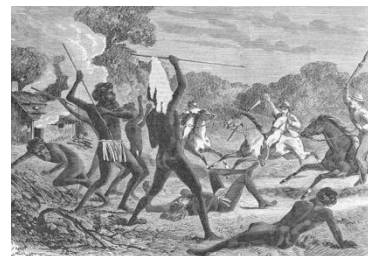
Not all Indigenous Australians resisted white encroachment on their lands either, whilst many also served in mounted police units and were involved in attacks on other tribes...

Opinions differ on whether to depict the conflict as one sided and mainly perpetrated by Europeans on Indigenous Australians or not. Although tens of thousands more Indigenous Australians died than Europeans, some cases of mass killing were not massacres but military defeats, and the higher death toll may in some cases have had more to do with the technological and logistic advantages enjoyed by Europeans...Although there were some instances of individuals and groups acquiring and using firearms, this was not widespread...

Fighting between Indigenous Australians and European settlers was localised as Indigenous groups did not form confederations capable of sustained resistance...According to the historian Geoffrey Blainey, in Australia during the colonial period: "In a thousand isolated places there were occasional shootings and spearings. Even worse, smallpox, measles, influenza and other new diseases swept from one Aboriginal camp to another ... The main conqueror of Aborigines was to be disease and its ally, demoralisation".

In Wikipedia's article on the “The History of Australia” it adds the following comments to the above:

Massive areas of land were cleared for agriculture and various other purposes in the first 100 years of European settlement. In addition to the obvious impacts this early clearing of land and importation of hard-hoofed animals had on the ecology of particular regions, it severely affected indigenous Australians, by reducing the resources they relied on for food, shelter and other essentials. This progressively forced them into smaller areas and reduced their numbers as the majority died of newly introduced diseases and lack of resources.



Indigenous resistance against the settlers was widespread, and prolonged fighting between 1788 and the 1920s led to the deaths of at least 20,000 indigenous people and between 2,000 and 2,500 Europeans.

During the mid-late 19th century, many indigenous Australians in south eastern Australia were relocated, often forcibly, to reserves and missions.

Some people sought huge tracts of land for grazing and agriculture while many (probably the vast majority) sought a fair share of land that was enough to make a living off.

What we have to remember is just how difficult it was to own land back in Britain and hard it was to work the land for food and to make a living compared to our modern age. We have to be careful not to project our modern age perceptions to the way that life was like back around 1800.

Life was genuinely hard back in colonial times and people fought tooth and nail just to get by and so they would do whatever they could to own a reasonable parcel of land.

These basic settlers would sometimes be amongst those targeted by Aboriginals who thought the land's resources they lived off was slipping away from them. At other times individual settlers mistreated (including rape) and even killed Aborigines in their way in a contemptuous manner.

All the discussion about conflict between the colonists and the settlers could easily make out that conflict was the dominant part of the relationships between them and that appears to not be the truth of the matter as well.

There are many positive accounts of friendship and cordiality between colonists and settlers. Explorers often found the local Aboriginals of great assistance and many locals found certain groups of Aboriginals very hospitable and friendly.

The left wing liberal claims of attempted genocide are fictitious. Never was there a co-ordinated attempt by colonial authorities to wipe out the local Aboriginal people despite the contemptible actions by some settlers. While some voting and other rights were not available until late in the 20th century there were cases in the 1800's of white men being convicted of murder of Aboriginals.

The term genocide has been used in conjunction with the subject of the Stolen Generation referring to the practice between 1910 and 1970 of removing mixed race (part Aboriginal, part white) children from their mothers and placing them in missionaries and other institutions so they would better assimilate into white society. In the Wikipedia article on the Stolen Generations it states:

Given their catastrophic population decline after white contact (population shrank from 1,250,000 in 1788 to 50,000 in 1930), whites assumed that the full-blood tribal Aboriginal population would be unable to sustain itself, and was doomed to extinction. The idea expressed by A. O. Neville, the Chief Protector of Aborigines for Western Australia, and others as late as 1930 was that mixed-race children could be trained to work in white society, and over generations would marry white and be assimilated into the society.

Neville's comments are labelled by some liberal historians as genocide which is ridiculous as no attempt was made to kill those of mixed race nor kill the full blood Aboriginals who were left alone if they assumed they would die out naturally from disease.

There is great debate over the magnitude of the Stolen Generations event as discussed in Wikipedia's article on the topic which includes counterclaims by conservatives such as Andrew Bolt and Keith Windshuttle. In one particular debate on the topic "Bolt then challenged Manne to produce ten cases in which the evidence justified the claim that children were 'stolen' as opposed to having

been removed for reasons such as neglect, abuse, abandonment, etc." (Wikipedia article – History Wars).

It was this issue which saw former prime minister Kevin Rudd issue a public apology on February 13, 2008 on behalf of the national government to the Aboriginal people and give a commitment by the government to further improve relations between the Australian government and the Aboriginal people.

I commend any efforts to improve such relations so long as they are not to the disadvantage of other people whether of Anglo-Saxon stock or any other people. Where genuine injustices have been made to the Aboriginal people these should be acknowledged and appropriate measures taken to right those wrongs. This also applies both ways. Where injustices have been committed by the Aboriginal people these should also be acknowledged and appropriate measures taken to right those wrongs.

It's important that the Aboriginal people are made to feel valued for their contributions to our society. I am certainly impressed with the sporting prowess of many of the star Aboriginal rugby league players as well as other Aboriginals like tennis player Evonne Cawley and Cathy Freeman in athletics who was very gracious in handling the over-the-top media publicity placed upon her during the 2000 Olympic Games. In contrast to that graciousness is the very physically talented boxer (and former league star) Anthony Mundine who has no concept of the christian virtue of humility.

It is also important that the Aboriginal people don't play the victim but are willing to play their part in accepting responsibility to correct their own behaviour where their own behaviour is contributing to problems amongst their own people. One commendable program is Deadly Choices committing to better educating Aboriginals on making better choices to improve their health.

I have always found it strange the change of the usage of terms for our native peoples from Aboriginal people to Indigenous people as both mean the very same thing – the original people. I believe the distinction is that Indigenous also includes the Torres Strait Islanders who are Melanesian and practically indistinguishable from the people of Papua New Guinea.

In most government buildings both the Aboriginal and Torres Strait flags are flown alongside the Australian flag. I personally think this is a bit of overkill. I can understand showing honour to the original inhabitants of the land and flying the Aboriginal flag but it just seems like a waste of money flying the Torres Strait Island flag right across the nation and not just in the far north of Queensland where most Torres Strait Islanders live.

The term "nation" was used to denote Native American peoples by early Americans such as George Washington in reference to the Five Nations of the Iroquois so the term has some precedent in being used for native peoples. The native peoples of America were far more numerous back in Washington's day compared to what they would later drop to. The term tribe is a more accurate term to use than nation from a numerical point of view.

The term nation for Aboriginal tribes is only of recent usage which has primarily come into vogue because of left wing historians who politically want to elevate the status of native peoples.

Given the very low numbers of Aboriginals within each "nation" I personally don't like the usage of the term nation for individual tribes of native peoples such as the Aboriginals or Native Americans. I have no problem referring to the collective native tribes of Australia or America as a nation but don't feel it's an accurate term when referring to individual tribes.

Former Australian Prime Minister John Howard in a 1996 lecture believed that the "balance sheet of Australian history" had come to be misrepresented by left wing political views. Wikipedia in its article "History Wars" notes these comments that he made:

The 'black armband' view of our history reflects a belief that most Australian history since 1788 has been little more than a disgraceful story of imperialism, exploitation, racism, sexism and other forms of discrimination. ...

I believe that the balance sheet of our history is one of heroic achievement and that we have achieved much more as a nation of which we can be proud than of which we should be ashamed.

In saying that I do not exclude or ignore specific aspects of our past where we are rightly held to account. Injustices were done in Australia and no-one should obscure or minimise them...

But ... our priority should ... [be] to commit to a practical program of action that will remove the enduring legacies of disadvantage.

Another controversial topic in regards to race relations in Australia was the White Australia Policy. One cannot have a proper understanding of the subject without understanding the background history of how the policy was instituted around the time that Australia was becoming a federated nation. Wikipedia in its article on the White Australia policy gives us this historical background to how the policy began:

During the 1880s Trade unions developed among shearers, miners, and stevedores (wharf workers), but soon spread to cover almost all blue-collar jobs. Shortages of labour led to high wages for a prosperous skilled working class, whose unions demanded and got an eight-hour day and other benefits unheard of in Europe.

Australia gained a reputation as "the working man's paradise." Some employers tried to undercut the unions by importing Chinese labour. This produced a reaction which led to all the colonies restricting Chinese and other Asian immigration. This was the foundation of the White Australia Policy...



The growth of the sugar industry in Queensland in the 1870s led to searching for labourers prepared to work in a tropical environment. During this time, thousands of "Kanakas" (Pacific Islanders) were brought into Australia as indentured workers.

In the 1870s and 1880s, the trade union movement began a series of protests against foreign labour. Their arguments were that Asians and Chinese took jobs away from white men, worked for "substandard" wages, lowered working conditions and refused unionisation.

Objections to these arguments came largely from wealthy land owners in rural areas. It was argued that without Asiatics to work in the tropical areas of the Northern Territory and Queensland, the area would have to be abandoned.

Despite these objections to restricting immigration, between 1875 and 1888 all Australian colonies enacted legislation which excluded all further Chinese immigration. Asian immigrants already residing in the Australian colonies were not expelled and retained the same rights as their Anglo and Southern compatriots.

Agreements were made to further increase these restrictions in 1895 following an Inter-colonial Premier's Conference where all colonies agreed to extend entry restrictions to all non-white races...

In writing about the preoccupations of the Australian population in early Federation Australia before the First World War in ANZAC to Amiens, the official historian of the war, Charles Bean, considered the White Australia policy and defined it as follows:

"White Australia Policy – a vehement effort to maintain a high Western standard of economy, society and culture [necessitating at that stage, however it might be camouflaged, the rigid exclusion of Oriental peoples]."

Immigration was a prominent topic in the lead up to Australian Federation. At the third Session of the Australasian Federation Convention of 1898, Western Australian premier and future federal cabinet member John Forrest summarised the prevailing feeling:

"It is of no use to shut our eyes to the fact that there is a great feeling all over Australia against the introduction of coloured persons. It goes without saying that we do not like to talk about it, but it is so."

The Barton Government which came to power following the first elections to the Commonwealth parliament in 1901 was formed by the Protectionist Party with the support of the Australian Labor Party.

The support of the Labor Party was contingent upon restricting non-white immigration, reflecting the attitudes of the Australian Workers Union and other labour organisations at the time, upon whose support the Labor Party was founded.

WHITE AUSTRALIA MUST STAY

THE White Australia Policy is 112 years old.
It has never been seriously challenged, although from time to time certain prominent persons in the community have tried to have it modified, or pretend it is what it is not.

On the statute book the policy is given legislative form as the Immigration Restriction Act. The word "white" does not appear.

However, everybody calls the policy "White Australia Policy" because that form is the heart of the matter; that is what it is, and that is what everyone knows it to be.

The policy is, in its broadest sense, a racial policy. It represents our determination to exclude from Australia, not all races other than our own, but the colored races.

Great problem of half-castes
The admixture of European races does not present the miscegenation problems that flow from the admixture of white and

It denotes the most critical part of its report to the "aggressive and militant" Indo-Europeans in Dutch New Guinea.

In terms of accomplishment the young colony has hardly yet been born, yet already the half-castes are its gravest problem.

Living standards must remain high
The White Australia Policy is not nowadays an economic policy. If thousands of Asiatics were allowed into the country and became citizens they would receive award wages and work under award conditions. In New South Wales and Queensland they would all have to become members of unions.

No greater economic problems would arise from their arrival than from the influx of Italians, Germans or Maltese.

But other problems—the unequal living standards, the political immaturity,

The White Australia Policy is a racial policy, but that does not imply that it is a racial superiority policy. The Asiatic peoples may be as proud of their origins and background as we are of ours.

In fact their own rigid immigration restriction policies, excluding white people, are proof that they are. Australians respect their immigration laws, do not quarrel with them, and are not sensitive about them.

Thus it is all the more puzzling to understand why certain Australians from time to time should find it necessary to apologise for the White Australia Policy.

This is the view of the Minister for External Affairs (Mr. Casey):
"I have constantly deplored the use of the very much outmoded term White Australia, which is most offensive to Asiatics."

Thousands of happy European migrants like those pictured above have come to Australia since the war—and no insurmountable problems have marked their assimilation into the community. Admission of coloreds would have grave problems—and these we do not want.

(Dr. Broughton), a Commission examined this recommendation and found it gravely dangerous to the future of the Colony.

The Commission gave as its grounds the fact that to system of coolie immigration could be established that would prevent the growth of the sheep

By 1861 there were 21,000 Chinese in N.S.W. In that year there was a riot, and a Restriction Act was passed.

A similar Act was passed in Queensland in 1877, when 20,000 Chinese had flocked to the Queensland

Colonial Premiers decided to extend restrictions against the Chinese to all colored races, and in 1901 the first Federal Parliament took over these restrictions under the Immigration Restriction Act, at the same time ordering the deportation of indentured Kanaka labor from the

The first Parliament of Australia quickly moved to restrict immigration to maintain Australia's British character, and the Pacific Island Labourers Bill and the Immigration Restriction Bill were passed shortly before parliament rose for its first Christmas recess.

The Colonial Secretary in Britain had however made it clear that a race-based immigration policy would run "contrary to the general conceptions of equality which have ever been the guiding principle of British rule throughout the Empire".

The Barton Government therefore conceived of the "language dictation test", which would allow the government, at the discretion of the minister, to block unwanted migrants by forcing them to sit a test in "any European language".

While restriction of immigrants by race is not, by and of itself, wrong because entry into any nation **is a privilege and NOT a right**, the language dictation test was a deceitful way of enforcing such restrictions.

The United States had a national quota based on ethnicity allowing entry up to a certain number of people from a certain ethnic background which was a more fairer way of restricting immigration than the dictation test until the national quota system was removed under the Democratic government in 1965. The White Australia policy was similarly removed around the same time.

In the 50 years since that time America, Britain, Australia, New Zealand and Canada have become very multi-racial to the point that those of Anglo-Saxon stock and even European stock are becoming rapidly overtaken demographically by non-white immigrants and their descendants. Some of the same worker issues that led to the White Australia policy are becoming more of an issue today as globalisation is causing the outsourcing of so much manufacturing and the jobs that go with that to China, India and other third world nations.

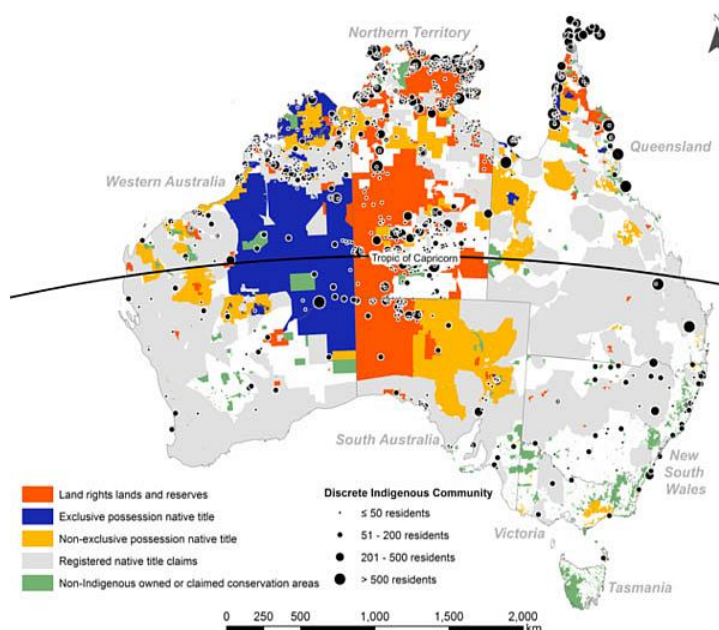
Back to the subject of land rights, the Aboriginal people have made great gains through the courts in regards to their own land rights and now control considerable parts of Australia. Wikipedia in its article "Aboriginal Land Rights in Australia" gives this overview of their gains that they have made:

Australia did not experience native title litigation until the 1970s, when Indigenous Australians (both Australian Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders) became more politically active. In 1971, Blackburn J of the Supreme Court of the Northern Territory rejected the concept in *Milirrpum v Nabalco Pty Ltd* (the "Gove land rights case"). The Aboriginal Land Rights Commission was established in 1973 in the wake of *Milirrpum*. Paul Coe, in *Coe v Commonwealth* (1979), attempted (unsuccessfully) to bring a class action on behalf of all Aborigines claiming all of Australia.

The Aboriginal Land Rights Act 1976 established a statutory procedure that returned approximately 40% of the Northern Territory to Aboriginal ownership; the Anangu Pitjantjatjara Yankunytjatjara Land Rights Act 1981 had a similar effect in South Australia.

The High Court of Australia, after paving the way by striking down a State statute under the Racial Discrimination Act 1975, overruled *Milirrpum* in *Mabo v Queensland (No 2)* (1992). *Mabo*, rejecting *terra nullius*, held that native title exists (6–1) and is extinguishable by the sovereign (7–0), without compensation (4–3).

In the wake of the decision, the Australian Parliament passed the Native Title Act 1993 (NTA), codifying the doctrine and establishing the National Native Title Tribunal (NNTT). *Western Australia v Commonwealth* (1995) upheld the NTA and struck down a conflicting Western Australia statute.



In 1996, the High Court held that pastoral leases, which cover nearly half of Australia, do not extinguish native title in Wik Peoples v Queensland.

In response, Parliament passed the Native Title Amendment Act 1998 (the "Ten Point Plan"), extinguishing a variety of Aboriginal land rights and giving state governments the ability to follow suit.

Western Australia v Ward (2002) held that native title is a bundle of rights, which may be extinguished one by one, for example, by a mining lease. Yorta Yorta v Victoria (2002), an appeal from the first native title claim to go to trial since the Native Title Act, adopted strict requirements of continuity of traditional laws and customs for native title claims to succeed.

Aboriginal people number 650 000 in Australia today making up 2.8% of the population. Proportional to their population they now own a greater share of Australia than people of Anglo-Saxon stock.

New Zealand

The history of the colonisation of New Zealand and the relationship between the British colonists and the Maori people of New Zealand is quite different from that of Australia.

While the British considered Australia legally to be "terra nullius" (empty land) when they settled there the British were more considerate when they negotiated to govern the land of New Zealand at the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840.

Captain Cook had visited New Zealand in 1769 but the British did no more for several decades. As settlers went across the Tasman from New South Wales conflict started to occur between the settlers and the Maori people the British government desired a peaceful settlement. The treaty saw Britain begin to administer the land and regulate any land sales between the Maori and the settlers. The Maori were presumed to own the land and the treaty guaranteed their property rights. Only the government could buy land from the Maori who then sold the land to land developers and settlers.

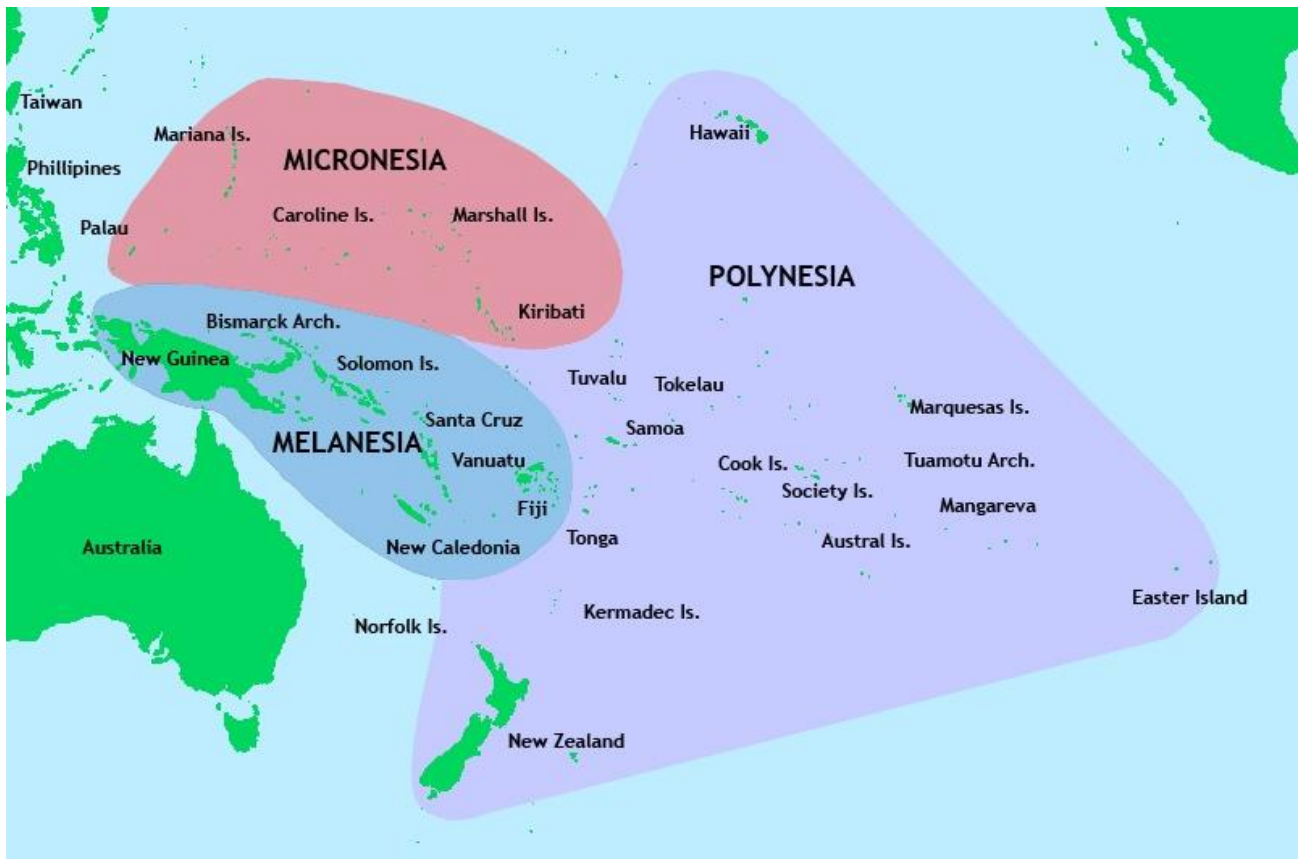
The Maori people did end up selling a great portion of the land to the settlers though there was unjust dealings on some occasions. The British white settlers (with many Scots settling the South Island in particular) did end up owning a majority of the land though many Maori today still hold title to their ancestral lands.

So who did God intend to own the land of New Zealand – the British descended people or the Maori?

New Zealand has two major islands – its North and South Islands. The North Island lies between 35 and 42° south of the equator. Auckland, near the top of the North Island, is about the same latitude as Melbourne at the bottom of the Australian continent. The South Island lies between 41 and 47° south of the equator.

Both islands are very far south of the tropics. The other lands of the Polynesian peoples, of which the Maori are a part of, such as Tonga, Samoa and the Cook Islands are between 10 and 20° south of the equator.

New Zealand has a considerably colder climate than the rest of Polynesia. This helps to explain the migration of a lot of Maoris from New Zealand to warmer areas in Australia like Sydney and Brisbane in particular. There is also a significantly higher percentage of white people on the South Island compared to the North Island. The Maoris have less of a claim on the South Island than they do on the North Island.



This climatic factor, as we have seen previously with other lands, indicates that New Zealand is a better fit for those of the white race, as opposed to brown skinned Maori Polynesians.

New Zealand also became a part of the “company of nations” that would descend from Ephraim, the patriarch Joseph who received the birthright promises from God (Genesis 48:19). The birthright promises give a very strong claim to the land of New Zealand from God to the descendants of Joseph.

Britain acknowledged the Maori as owners of the land of New Zealand and yet through the high volume of sales from the Maori to the British settlers a way was made by God’s providence for the people of Ephraim to receive this land as part of the birthright promise. God would see to it that His promise of the birthright blessings were fulfilled one way or the other.

Polynesia does appear to be the land inheritance of the Polynesians including the Maori. I suspect in the millennium that God will raise up much more land from the sea in Polynesia – a “new” Aeotaroa for the Maori.

Below are a series of quotes from Wikipedia covering more on the history of New Zealand and relations between the European colonists and the Maori:

New Zealand was originally settled by Polynesians from Eastern Polynesia. Genetic and archaeological evidence suggests that humans emigrated from Taiwan to Melanesia and then travelled east through to the Society Islands; after a pause of 70 to 265 years, a new wave of exploration led to the discovery and settlement of New Zealand.

The most current reliable evidence strongly indicates that initial settlement of New Zealand occurred around 1280 CE...

In this period, fortified pā became more common, although there is debate about the actual frequency of warfare. As elsewhere in the Pacific, cannibalism was part of warfare.

The first Europeans known to reach New Zealand were the crew of Dutch explorer Abel Tasman who arrived in his ships Heemskerck and Zeehaen. Tasman anchored at the northern end of the South Island in Golden Bay (he named it Murderers' Bay) in December 1642 and sailed northward to Tonga following an attack by local Māori.

Tasman sketched sections of the two main islands' west coasts. Tasman called them Staten Landt, after the States General of the Netherlands, and that name appeared on his first maps of the country.

In 1645 Dutch cartographers changed the name to Nova Zeelandia in Latin, from Nieuw Zeeland, after the Dutch province of Zeeland. It was subsequently anglicised as New Zealand by British naval captain James Cook of HM Bark Endeavour who visited the islands more than 100 years after Tasman during 1769–1770. Cook returned to New Zealand on both of his subsequent voyages...



Map of the New Zealand coastline as Cook charted it on his first visit in 1769–70. The track of the *Endeavour* is also shown.

From the 1790s, the waters around New Zealand were visited by British, French and American whaling, sealing and trading ships. Their crews traded European goods, including guns and metal tools, for Māori food, water, wood, flax and sex. Māori were reputed to be enthusiastic and canny traders, even though the levels of technology, institutions and property rights differed greatly from the standards in European societies.

Although there were some conflicts, such as the killing of French explorer Marc-Joseph Marion du Fresne in 1772 and the destruction of the Boyd in 1809, most contact between Māori and European was peaceful.

European (Pākehā) settlement increased through the early decades of the 19th century, with numerous trading stations established, especially in the North Island. Christianity was introduced to New Zealand in 1814 by Samuel Marsden, who travelled to the Bay of Islands where he founded a mission station on behalf of the Church of England's Church Missionary Society.

By 1840 over 20 stations had been established. From missionaries, the Māori learnt not just about Christianity but also about European farming practices and trades, and how to read and write. Beginning in 1820, linguist Samuel Lee worked with Māori chief Hongi Hika to transcribe the Māori language into written form (**Wikipedia article – History of New Zealand**).

Between 1800 and 1820, there were 65 sealing voyages and 106 whaling voyages to New Zealand, mainly from Britain and Australia.

A trickle of escaped convicts from Australia and deserters from visiting ships, as well as early Christian missionaries, also exposed the indigenous population to outside influences. In the Boyd Massacre in 1809, Māori took hostage and killed 66 members of the crew and passengers in apparent revenge for the captain's whipping the son of a Māori chief. Given accounts of cannibalism in this attack, shipping companies and missionaries kept a distance and significantly reduced contact with the Māori for several years...

During the period from 1805 to 1840, the acquisition of muskets by tribes in close contact with European visitors upset the balance of power among Māori tribes. This led to a period of bloody intertribal warfare, known as the Musket Wars, which resulted in the decimation of several tribes and the driving of others from their traditional territory.

During the Musket wars, it has been estimated that the total number of the Māori population dropped from about 100,000 in 1800 to between 50,000 and 80,000 at the end of the wars in 1843. The 1856–1857 census of Māori, which gives a figure of 56,049, suggests the lower number of around 50,000 is perhaps more accurate. The 1850s were a decade of relative stability and Māori economic growth...



At the same time, the Māori suffered high mortality rates for new Eurasian infectious diseases, such as influenza, smallpox and measles, which killed an unknown number of Māori: estimates vary between ten and fifty percent...

With increasing Christian missionary activity and growing European settlement in the 1830s, and with growing lawlessness in New Zealand, the British Crown acceded to repeated requests from missionaries and some chiefs to intervene. Some freewheeling escaped convicts and seamen, as well as gunrunners and Americans actively worked against the British government by spreading rumours amongst the Māori that the government would oppress and mistreat them. Tamati Waka Nene, a pro-government chief, was angry that the government had not taken active steps to stop gunrunners selling weapons to rebels in Hokianga.

In addition, the French were showing imminent interest in acquiring New Zealand to add to their stake in Polynesia. British immigrants believed that the French Catholic missionaries were spreading anti-British feeling. All of the chiefs who spoke against the Treaty on 5 February 1840 were Catholic. Years after the treaty was signed, Bishop Pompallier admitted that all the Catholic chiefs and especially Rewa, had consulted him for advice.

Ultimately, Queen Victoria sent Royal Navy Captain William Hobson with instructions to negotiate a treaty between Britain and the people of New Zealand. Soon after arrival in New Zealand in February 1840, Hobson negotiated a treaty with North Island chiefs, later to become known as the Treaty of Waitangi.



PRESENTATION PLATE, CENTENARY NUMBER "NEW ZEALAND FREE LANDS" OCTOBER 15, 1940. THE SIGNING OF THE TREATY OF WAITANGI, FEBRUARY 6, 1840. The day that New Zealand became a part of the British Empire. The painting displays the historical group assembled at the residence of Mr. James Busby, British Resident, at Waitangi, Bay of Islands, to meet Captain William Hobson, R.N., first Governor of New Zealand. The Rev. Henry Williams acted as interpreter, explaining the terms of the Treaty to the Māori chiefs. Principals in the impressive and historical scene included Mr. Williams, Captain Joseph Nias, R.N., Captain Hobson and Mr. Busby. The Māori chief in the act of signing the Treaty is Tamati Waka Nene.

In the end, 500 tribal chiefs and a small number of Europeans signed the Treaty, while some chiefs — such as Te Wherowhero in Waikato, and Te Kani-a-Takirau from the east coast of the North Island — refused to sign. The Treaty gave Māori the rights of British subjects and guaranteed Māori property rights and tribal autonomy, in return for accepting British sovereignty.

Considerable dispute continues over aspects of the Treaty of Waitangi. The original treaty was written mainly by Busby and translated into Māori by Henry Williams, who was moderately proficient in Māori, and his son William, who was more skilled. They were handicapped by their imperfect Māori and the lack of exactly similar words in Māori, as well as by deep differences among the peoples on concepts of property rights and sovereignty, for example. At Waitangi the chiefs signed the Māori translation.

Despite the different understandings of the treaty, relations between Māori and Europeans during the early colonial period were largely peaceful. Many Māori groups set up substantial businesses, supplying food and other products for domestic and overseas markets. Among the early European settlers who learnt the Māori language and recorded Māori mythology, George Grey, Governor of New Zealand from 1845–1855 and 1861–1868, stands out.

However, rising tensions over disputed land purchases and attempts by Māori in the Waikato to establish what some saw as a rival to the British system of royalty led to the New Zealand wars in the 1860s. These conflicts started when rebel Māori attacked isolated settlers in Taranaki but were fought mainly between Crown troops –from both Britain and new regiments raised in Australia, aided by settlers and some allied Māori (known as kupapa) – and numerous Māori groups opposed to the disputed land sales, including some Waikato Māori.

While these conflicts resulted in few Māori (compared to the earlier Musket wars) or European deaths, the colonial government confiscated tracts of tribal land as punishment for what were called rebellions. In some cases the government confiscated land from tribes that had taken no part in the war, although this was almost immediately returned. Some of the confiscated land was returned to both kupapa and "rebel" Māori. Several minor conflicts also arose after the wars, including the incident at Parihaka in 1881 and the Dog Tax War from 1897–98.

The Native Land Acts of 1862 and 1865 established the Native Land Court, which was intended to transfer Māori land from communal ownership into individual household title as a means to assimilation and to facilitate greater sales to European immigrants. Māori land under individual title became available to be sold to the colonial government or to settlers in private sales.

Between 1840 and 1890, Māori sold 95 percent of their land (63,000,000 of 66,000,000 acres (270,000 km²) in 1890). In total 4% of this was confiscated land, although about a quarter of this was returned. 300,000 acres was returned to Kupapa Māori mainly in the lower Waikato River Basin area.

Individual Māori titleholders received considerable capital from these land sales, with some lower Waikato Chiefs being given 1000 pounds each. Disputes later arose over whether or not promised compensation in some sales was fully delivered. Some claim that later, the selling off of Māori land and the lack of appropriate skills hampered Māori participation in developing the New Zealand economy, eventually diminishing the capacity of many Māori to sustain themselves.

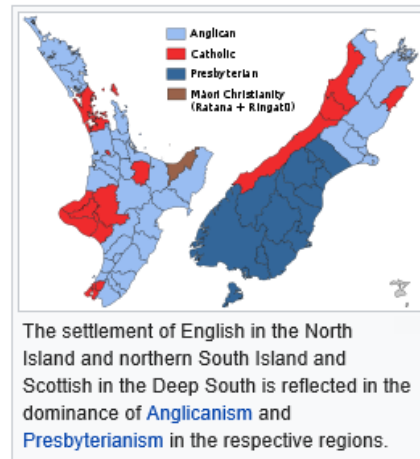
By 1891 Māori comprised just 10% of the population but still owned 17% of the land, although much of it was of poor quality...

In 1840, New Zealand had a Māori population of about 50,000 to 70,000 and only about 2,000 Europeans. By 1860 the Europeans had increased to 50,000. The Māori population had declined to 37,520 in the 1871 census, although Te Rangi Hīroa (Sir Peter Buck) believed this figure was too low.

The figure was 42,113 in the 1896 census, by which time Europeans numbered more than 700,000 (Wikipedia article – Maori People).

The settlement of English in the North Island and northern South Island and Scottish in the Deep South [not unlike the Scots settling the colder part of the island of Great Britain] is reflected in the dominance of Anglicanism and Presbyterianism in the respective regions.

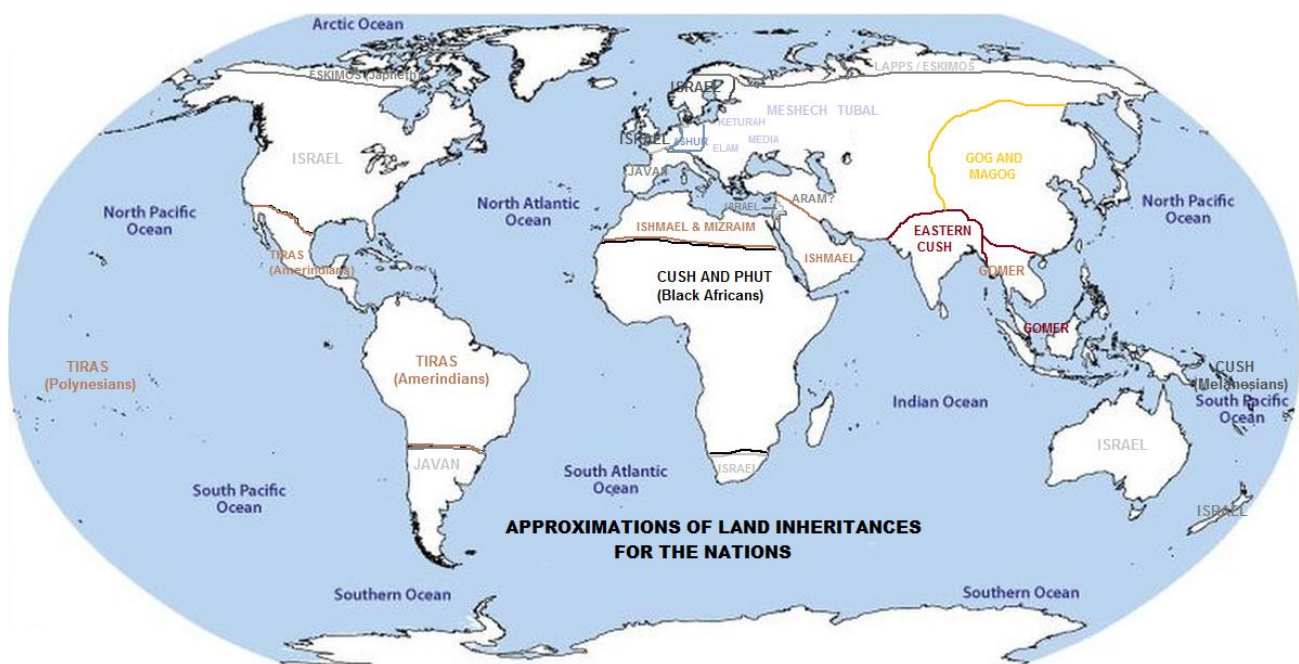
While the North Island was convulsed by the Land Wars, the South Island, with its lower Māori population, was generally peaceful. In 1861 gold was discovered at Gabriel's Gully in Central Otago, sparking a gold rush. Dunedin became the wealthiest city in the country and many in the South Island resented financing the North Island's wars. In 1865 Parliament defeated a proposal to make the South Island independent by 17 to 31 (Wikipedia article – History of New Zealand).



During the 1990s and 2000s, the government negotiated with Māori to provide redress for breaches by the Crown of the guarantees set out in the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840. By 2006 the government had provided over NZ\$900 million in settlements, much of it in the form of land deals... As a result of the redress paid to many iwi, Māori now have significant interests in the fishing and forestry industries. There is a growing Māori leadership who are using the treaty settlements as an investment platform for economic development...

In the 2013 census, 598,605 people identified as being part of the Māori ethnic group, accounting for 14.9% of the New Zealand population...Outside of New Zealand, a large Māori population exists in Australia, estimated at 155,000 in 2011 (Wikipedia article – Maori People).

BELOW IS A MAP SHOWING LIKELY INHERITANCES FOR EACH OF THE MAJOR RACIAL GROUPS BASED ON WHAT WE HAVE COVERED SO FAR:



The Land Dispute Between the Jews and Palestinians

Now that we have clarified the lands that God promised to the tribes of Israel let's look at the current land dispute between the Jews and the Palestinians.

At this time there are politically correct claims that the Jews stole Palestinian land and that the West Bank territory is occupied territory. While Arabs for many centuries up to the Ottoman conquest of 1517 controlled the land of Israel there was never an Arab nation called Palestine before the modern nation of Israel was formed.

It was from Jordan that Israel captured the West Bank territory in 1967 and from Egypt it captured the Gaza Strip. In the 18 years (1949-1967) that both majority Arab countries of Jordan and Egypt controlled the West Bank and Gaza they could have formed a Palestinian state but never did.

Anciently the Israelite nation lived in the land of Israel from the time of the Judges to the Babylonian captivity of the Jewish nation. The nation of Israel split into two nations known as Israel (10 tribes in the north) and Judah (the Jews plus Benjamin in the south). The northern kingdom of Israel was taken into captivity by the Assyrians and a century later the Jews were carried off to Babylon.

After the fall of the Babylonian empire the Jews were allowed to go back to their homeland and there was a Jewish province of the Persian empire and then control of that Jewish province went back and forth between two divisions of the Greek empire – the Selucid empire based in Syria and Ptolemaic empire based in Egypt.

The Jews, following the sacrilegious acts of Selucid ruler Antiochus Epihanes, revolted and won full independence under the Maccabees in 165 BC who ruled for a century before the Romans conquered the land.

The Jews revolted against the Romans in 70 AD which saw the destruction of Jerusalem and the rebuilt temple. Following another Jewish revolt in 135 AD the Romans drove all the Jews out of Judea which started the near 2000 year long Jewish Diaspora.

The name Palestine was never used for the land until after the Jews were purged from the land. The name Palestine comes from Philistia but the land of Israel's ancient enemies, the Philistines, was only ever the southern coastal strip and never used for most of the land of Israel and Judea.

After the fall of Rome in 476 AD the eastern Roman empire (the Byzantine empire) continued ruling from Constantinople (Istanbul) for nearly 1000 years. They lost control of the Holy Land to the new Islamic Arab empire in 638 AD. Apart from a brief period during the Crusades, the Arabs controlled the Holy Land until the 1517.

The Ottomans in Turkey overthrew the Byzantines bringing an end to the eastern Roman empire and then conquered much of the Middle East including the Holy Land in 1517. The Turkish Ottomans were Islamic but they were not Arabs. They ruled the land for 400 years from 1517 to 1917 when the Ottomans were defeated by the British during World War I.

Historically, Israel ruled the land for 10 centuries before Christ and the Arabs controlled the land for 9 centuries between 638 and 1517 AD.

The ancient Philistines were closely related to the Egyptians, both being descendants of "Ham". "MIZRAIM begot...Casluhim (from whom came the PHILISTINES...)" (Genesis 10:14). The Egyptians descended from MIZRAIM. The Philistines' homeland always consisted of only a small

strip of land on the Southeastern coast of the Mediterranean. Some of the Palestinians who live there in the Gaza Strip are likely to be descended from the ancient Philistines.

Ethnic Arabs are descendants of Abraham and Hagar (who was an Egyptian). Furthermore since Ishmael married an Egyptian wife, this would mean his twelve sons (Genesis 25:16) were three-quarters Egyptian. Therefore, ethnic Arabs are closely related to the Egyptians who were in turn closely related and physically similar to the Philistines!

All three peoples (Arabs, Egyptian and Philistines) are Hamite or predominantly Hamite in the case of Arabs. Arabs are referred to as Semitic but they are only one quarter from the bloodline of Shem and three quarters Hamitic.

While some Palestinians in the Gaza Strip may be descended from the Philistines (descended from a son of Egypt's ancestor Mizraim) there is good evidence that the bulk of the remaining Palestinians in the West Bank, Jordan and Israel are descended from predominantly Edom (Esau) and Ishmael to a lesser degree.

Below are some quotes on this point of who the Palestinians are from an article by Raymond McNair called "Solving the Arab-Israeli Impasse":

What political situation in the Mideast allowed the children of EDOM to move up from the south (called ARABAH) into the more "lush" lands of southern Judah? The Reader's Digest Atlas of the Bible explains how this came about:

"To the east, in what had been Edom, people from Northwest Arabia were establishing themselves. Later known as NABATAEANS, they would become one of the great commercial peoples of antiquity.... The Babylonian invasions of the 6th century [c. 586BC] had destroyed effective government in Edom and Moab and allowed these desert nomads to infiltrate and eventually rule an area from southern Syria to Edom as well as much of the Negeb and even western Sinai. From Petra the NABATAEANS eventually controlled the King's Highway as well as the east-west caravan routes from Arabia through Ezion-Geber to Gaza and Egypt.

"The heyday of these people would come later, but already they were driving the Edomites (later known as IDUMAEANS) into the Negeb and what had been SOUTHERN JUDAH. Settling in the desert south of Beer-sheba, the Edomites established themselves in the relatively lush tableland and hills around HEBRON, which became one of their chief cities" (Atlas of the Bible, 1981 ed., p. 150).

The Nabataeans were a branch of Ishmaelites, later known as "Arabs." (Ishmael was Abraham's eldest son, Genesis 16:11-16)...

The N.T. Herodian kings were also of Idumaeans descent. "The father of Herod the Great was named Antipater. He was of Idumaeans blood. The IDUMAEANS were of the Edomite stock, the descendants from Esau" (Unger's Bib. Dict, 3rd ed., "Herod"). Herod tried to kill Christ, and his son, Herod Antipas, beheaded John the Baptist (Matthew 14:3-12). Further, another of the Herods "killed James the brother of John with the sword" (Acts. 12:1-2)...

One of Esau's sons was called TEMAN whom some believe to be the father of the people of "Yemen."

Esau's twelve sons included Reuel, Teman, Omar, Amalek, Bozrah, Hadad — all of which names figure prominently in "Arab" history of the Middle East.

There are indications that some of the "Arab" peoples of Yemen are of Edomite descent, although this does not exclude some of them being Ishmaelites. There is considerable evidence that some of these Edomites also migrated into the PERSIAN GULF area, establishing colonies

there as well as in Yemen. Undoubtedly, a number of Iraqis and Syrians are also of Edomite descent...

The "Amalekites" were a warlike branch of Edomites who had descended from Esau's grandson, Amalek (Genesis 36:12). Remember, the Amalekites were the first people to attack the Israelites after they left Egypt (Exodus 17:8-16).

"Edom and Moab were later conquered by the NABATAEANS [Arab descendants of Ishmael], and the EDMITES migrated to SOUTHERN JUDEA, where they were known in New Testament times as IDUMAEANS" (The New Encyclopedia Britannica, vol. 4, p. 373)...

Wicked Haman was an Amalekite of Edomite descent, and he served in a high position in the Persian court at the Palace in Shushan, Persia...

The largest Edomite migration into Judea/Samaria occurred in the centuries following the Roman captivity of the Jews in 70AD. Ezekiel's prophecy reveals that the west Edomites then claimed the "two countries"—i.e. the "two nations" of JUDEA and SAMARIA—as their own land: (Ezekiel 35:1-10). And their modern-day descendants, the PALESTINIANS, still think the land of Palestine is rightfully theirs!

Much of the Israeli-Arab bitterness and strife during the past fifty-some years is over the question of who, according to the Bible, are the legal inheritors, and therefore the rightful possessors of the Promised Land! Like Esau, the Palestinian Arabs feel the Jews have taken away the "blessing" they had enjoyed in the land of Palestine, where they had lived and formed a majority for many centuries., during which time the Jews were a minority...

We noted that an important ancient city of the Edomite peoples was called BOZRAH. And we also saw that some "Arabs" (undoubtedly of Edomite blood, or connections) moved into what is now southern Iraq and founded the city of BASRA in 636 AD (see Genesis 36:33). Numerous prophecies reveal that God will cause a great "sacrifice" at Bozrah/Basra at the end of this age (Isaiah 34:6, 63:9; Jeremiah 48:24; 49:23, 22). It would appear that this is an end-time prophecy regarding a slaughter of Edomites in the area of modern BASRA, Iraq's second largest city, and her only port city.

"Teman" means "south," and alludes to the fact that Teman's descendants would go to the south, in what we now call "YEMEN"! There are indications that some of Esau's descendants migrated to southern Iraq, Syria, and apparently some moved further eastward into Central Asia—to the general area east of the Caspian Sea. Some Bible students also think that some Edomites also settled in Turkey...

Some students of biblical prophecy have assumed that the "Turks" may be descendants of Esau because one of Esau's sons was named "Teman," and they connect that name with "Ottoman" (used by the OTTOMAN TURKS). But is the name "Ottoman" to be derived from TEMAN, or some other person? "OTTOMAN EMPIRE, the empire of OTTOMAN TURKS, which was founded by Osman (Othman) I (d. 1326. Constantly varying in extent it included at different epochs: Asia Minor, and beyond the Caspian Sea; the Balkan states, Greece, Crete and Cyprus; parts of Hungary, Austria and southern Russia; Syria, Iraq, Palestine and Egypt; North Africa as far west as Algeria; and parts of Arabia. The period of the Empire ended when Sultan Mohammed VI fled from Turkey on Nov. 17, 1922" (Encyc. Brit. 1970 ed., vol. 16, "Ottoman Empire," p. 1162).

Thus we see that the name Ottoman" is not derived directly from Esau's son "Teman," but derives from a 14th century Turk named "OSMAN," also known as "OTHMAN." Was this merely a linguistic variation of the name TEMAN, a descendant of Esau/Edom?

Modern Gaza's "core peoples" are undoubtedly of ancient Philistine stock. Nonetheless, mixed among them are a number of "Canaanites," "Ishmaelites," "Edomites," etc.

Tom Robinson in an article entitled "Who are the Palestinians?" writes the following about them:

"The Palestinian people does not exist. The creation of a Palestinian state is only a means for continuing our struggle against the state of Israel for our Arab unity. In reality today there is no difference between Jordanians, Palestinians, Syrians and Lebanese. Only for political and tactical reasons do we speak today about the existence of a Palestinian people, since Arab national interests demand that we posit the existence of a distinct 'Palestinian people' to oppose Zionism" (quoted by Joseph Farah, "Palestinian People Do Not Exist," WND.com, July 11, 2002).

In fact, the first article in the 1964 PLO Charter proclaims, "Palestine is an Arab homeland bound by strong Arab national ties to the rest of the Arab Countries and which together form the great Arab homeland"...

In fact, it should be pointed out that the Palestinians do not consider only the West Bank and Gaza Strip as Palestinian territories occupied by Israel. They regard the whole of what is called the land of Israel to be the land of Palestine belonging to the Palestinians, with all of it illegally occupied by the Jewish state.

Ironically the "West Bank" bears this name as denoting territory Jordan annexed and occupied on the west side of the Jordan River after 1948 (rather than being called east Palestine)...

Where did the name Palestine come from? When the Romans quashed the Jewish revolt of 135 AD, they merged the Roman province of Judaea into Syria and called the new province Syria-Palaestina, presumably to remove its Jewish distinction.

The term Palestine, while derived from the ancient Philistines, previously had become a common geographic distinction for the land well before the renaming, the term used by such Greek and Roman writers as Herodotus, Aristotle, Pliny the Elder, Plutarch and others—and even a few times by the first-century Jewish historians Philo of Alexandria and Flavius Josephus...

In the late 1600s, during Ottoman rule, a geographer and language expert named Hadriani Relandi toured the land, surveying about 2,500 places where people lived that were mentioned in the Bible or Mishnah. He recorded his observations in a book published in 1714. What does the book show?

"1. Not one settlement in the Land of Israel has a name that is of Arabic origin...not one Arabic settlement has an original Arabic name.

"2. Most of the land was empty, desolate, and the inhabitants few in number and mostly concentrated in the towns Jerusalem, Acco, Tzfat, Jaffa, Tiberius and Gaza. Most of the inhabitants were Jews and the rest Christians. There were few Muslims, mostly nomad Bedouins...who arrived in the area as construction and agricultural labor reinforcement, seasonal workers"...(Avi Goldreich, "A Tour of Palestine; the Year Is 1695," Think-Israel.org, Aug. 4, 2007)...

In the latter period the land "had become nearly desolate. The Turkish government taxed landowners by the number of trees on their land. The forests were decimated in an effort to avoid the tax. Hills and plains were overgrazed by sheep and goats. Large tracts ceased to be cultivated and lost their fertility. Many cities were abandoned. Swamps and deserts encroached upon the battered landscape. The fabled Holy Land had sunk into a sleeping death" (video presentation The Galilee Experience, 1997)...

The most famous to speak of the land's condition was the American author Mark Twain in his book *The Innocents Abroad* after his visit in 1867. Joseph Katz summarizes what Twain found:

"In one location after another, Twain registered gloom at his findings: 'Stirring scenes... occur in the valley [Jezreel] no more. There is not a solitary village throughout its whole extent—not for

thirty miles in either direction ...' [He further wrote of] '...these unpeopled deserts, these rusty mounds of barrenness ... that melancholy ruin of Capernaum ... We reached Tabor safely ... We never saw a human being on the whole route."

The Jews returning to the land in the late 1800s and early 1900s as part of the Zionist movement and during the time of the British Mandate sparked further immigration of surrounding Arab countries. This migration was so large as to overwhelm and assimilate the earlier non-Jewish immigrants, leading to all being essentially Arabized and regarded as Arab.

"The 'indigenous' 4.3% comprised many non-Arab nationalities. [But] all of them were swamped by the Arab immigrants and within a few generations largely lost their identity" (Grynglas).

What prompted this large influx of Arabs into the land?

"Records show that it was 19th and 20th century Jewish settlement and the resulting employment opportunities that drew successive waves of Arab immigrants to Palestine. 'The Arab population shows a remarkable increase...partly due to the import of Jewish capital into Palestine and other factors associated with the growth of the [Jewish] National Home' (the Peel Commission Report, 1937)..."

"British PM Winston Churchill said [of Palestine] in 1939: "...far from being persecuted, the Arabs have crowded into the country" (Grynglas).

And this large-scale migration into the land continued up to the formation of the Israeli state, when "most Muslims living in Palestine...had been living there for fewer than 60 years" (Ezequiel Doiny, "The Muslim Colonists," Gatestone Institute, Aug. 15, 2014).

Mideast expert Daniel Pipes, in reviewing Joan Peters' 1984 book *From Time Immemorial: The Origins of the Arab-Jewish Conflict Over Palestine*, states:

"The data unearthed by Joan Peters indicate that Arabs benefited economically so much by the presence of Jewish settlers from Europe that they traveled hundreds of miles to get closer to them. In turn, this explains why the definition of a refugee from Palestine in 1948 is a person who lived there for just two years [two years!] because many Arab residents in 1948 had immigrated so recently."

Thus, as Daniel Greenfield states, "The 'Palestinians' are what they always were: a foreign Islamic Arab colony inside Israel." And he poignantly answers Mahmoud Abbas' claim of a Zionist colonial enterprise at the outset of our examination, declaring: "The 'Palestinians' are not the victims of colonialism. They are its perpetrators"..."

Among the Arabs are also some elements from other early tribes, including that of Jacob's brother Esau, who was renamed Edom. Esau intermarried with daughters of Ishmael and the Canaanites. And we should further realize that Esau's descendants, the Edomites, are not limited to the Arabs but include various other peoples.

Why focus on Edom here in regard to the Palestinian Arabs? The answer is found in a remarkable prophecy in the book of Obadiah, which concerns what will happen to the Edomites in the end time.

Verse 19 is speaking of territories—stating that those who control particular territories in the Holy Land will come to possess additional territories there. In context, we can see that Israelites in this verse are retaking areas that the Edomites have stolen.

Fascinatingly, the areas listed as doing the taking here are areas that are today populated by Jews. The areas being taken back are now populated by Palestinians—thus apparently identifying the Palestinians as Edomites, at least in significant measure.

It could be that some of the disparate peoples making up the non-Jewish, non-Arab inhabitants of the Holy Land prior to the more recent Arab influx are also made up of Edomites to some degree (see our online commentary for more details—at bible.ucg.org/bible-commentary/Obadiah/) [Much of the more recent influx could also contain a considerable percentage of Edomites as well - RW].

God further prophesies against Edom in Ezekiel 35-36. He warns in chapter 35 that "Mount Seir," the land of Edom, because of its inhabitants' lust for the lands of Israel and Judah, will be judged and made desolate (verses 10-15).

God gives a similar warning in chapter 36, verse 5, and then says He will end the shame His land has borne and bring back the people of Israel to at last make abundant use of it.

Amazingly, through many prophecies we learn that the return of the Jewish people today is only a small foretaste of a far greater return of all Israel to the Promised Land under the coming reign of the Jewish Messiah, the Savior of all peoples, Jesus Christ.

It will shock many to learn that the Palestinian Arabs are the ones now wrongly occupying the land God gave to the people of Israel forever. Rest assured, He will not allow things to go on as they are indefinitely. All will come to pass just as He promises (Beyond Today, May-June 2018).

In the UCG booklet "The Middle East in Bible Prophecy" the following is written about events from World War I to the birth of the nation of Israel:

On the eve of World War I the British already constituted a major power in the Middle East. Originally they had become involved to protect their lifeline to India, the most prized possession of the British Empire. Benjamin Disraeli, a British prime minister of Jewish descent, had arranged the financing of the Suez Canal, considered a vital artery of the empire. The British controlled Egypt, the location of the canal, but did not annex it as a colony. They also ruled Aden, at the southern tip of Arabia, and held other strategic territories around the Persian Gulf.

Thus when World War I broke out, the British were in a perfect position to sponsor an Arab revolt against the Turks, allies of their enemy Germany. This Arab revolt began in the Hejaz, the coastal region of Arabia along the Red Sea where Mecca and Medina sit, on June 10, 1916, two years into the First World War. The revolt was led by the grand sharif of Mecca and leader of the Hashemite clan, Hussein ibn Ali (1852-1931), a descendant of Muhammad through the prophet's grandson Hasan. Hussein was an ancestor of the present Jordanian monarch, also a Hashemite.

Ironically, in this revolt the Arabs sided with Christian British forces against the Muslim Turks, but the desire for an independent Arab nation was paramount. Two of the sharif's sons led the Arab forces, financed by the British and assisted in the field by the famous British soldier T.E. Lawrence (Lawrence of Arabia). The Arabs understood that victory would mean an Arab nation.

In a series of 10 confidential letters...Sharif Hussein offered to help the British by revolting against the Turks, in exchange for a promise of independence for the Arabs after victory. The British agreed to this, with the exclusion of some areas, including those under British control. The uprising was successful.

In October 1917 Allied forces under British General Allenby invaded Palestine, capturing Jerusalem on Dec. 9. For the first time since the Crusaders were defeated in 1244 the city was once again in Christian hands...

Anxious to win the war, the British had given contradictory promises to the Arabs and Jews... the British had issued the famous Balfour Declaration, named after their foreign secretary, Arthur James Balfour. This declaration pledged British support for a national Jewish homeland

in Palestine...Arabs had fought with the British against the Turks, contributing to the Allied victory over the Central European powers.

In return, they expected full control of all Arab lands, other than those already under European colonial rule such as Egypt, Aden and Algeria. They certainly expected Arabia, Iraq, Syria and Palestine to be directly and exclusively controlled by Arabs...

At the peace conference in Paris that led to the signing of the Treaty of Versailles, Arab delegates (and T.E. Lawrence) were betrayed as the victorious allies divided the Ottoman Empire between British and French spheres of influence.

The newly formed League of Nations formally gave Britain a mandate to rule over Palestine, Transjordan and Iraq. The French received a similar mandate to rule over Syria and Lebanon. Neither the Jews nor the Arabs received what they had been promised — not then, at least...

The Egyptians regained their sovereignty in 1922 and Iraq in 1932, though Britain continued to have considerable influence in both. Lebanon received independence from France in 1941. Syria followed five years later in 1946, the same year in which the British...gave independence to Transjordan (shortened to Jordan)...The British notified the recently formed United Nations, successor to the pre-war League of Nations, that they would leave Palestine, giving the U.N. six months notice.

The United Nations voted to divide Palestine between the Arabs and the Jews, with Jerusalem to become an international city. The Israelis accepted the plan; the Arabs rejected it.

As the British left, Jewish leaders proclaimed the birth of the independent Jewish nation of Israel the evening of May 14-15, 1948. Within hours, armies from five surrounding Arab nations attacked Israel, determined to destroy the fledgling state with its population of a mere half-million. The war lasted until early the following year, with Israel [miraculously winning the war and] gaining territory in addition to the land granted by the UN resolution. Most of the Arabs in those areas left their lands and have been refugees ever since, consigned to makeshift settlements in the West Bank, Gaza, Lebanon, Syria, Jordan and Egypt.

Those Arabs who stayed in Israel were granted citizenship in the new country — and, ironically, today enjoy considerably more personal freedoms than their fellow Arabs in Arab-ruled countries (p.40-46).

When the Arab nations attacked the nation of Israel when it was given birth in 1948 those Arab nations expelled the Jews in their own nations. Almost forgotten today these expelled Jewish refugees numbered 850 000. A quarter of them migrated to the United States and other western nations while 650 000 were assimilated into the new nation of Israel.

The Arabs who stayed in the new nation of Israel were not expelled but were granted citizenship in the new country. While many stayed and enjoy much personal freedom in Israel some 700 000 Palestinians fled Israel in 1948.

In 1948 when war broke out upon the formation of Israel the Palestinians were encouraged by the other Arab nations to leave Israel with the intention that they could go back after the Arabs won the war.

It is not the Jewish nation of Israel that created the Palestinian refugee crisis. It is the Arab countries around Israel who, to this day, refuse to integrate the descendants of the original Palestinians who fled Israel into the Arab nations where they are today in makeshift border settlements.

Today Jordan is a nation of 5.7 million people of which 40% or 2.3 million are Palestinian. Half of that Palestinian population are in the makeshift border refugee settlements.

The British during World War I made promises both to the Jews and to the Arabs to have a homeland. Though both Jews and Arabs did receive homelands the Arabs expected the whole of the land of Israel as part of their homeland.

The British received a League of Nations mandate in 1922 to promote a Jewish homeland. British Palestine originally included today's Israeli nation and all of Jordan.

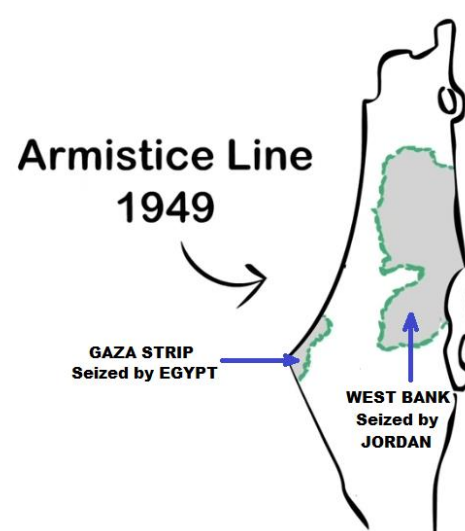
Soon after British colonial secretary Winston Churchill split Palestine into two with the greater part (74%) on the eastern side of the Jordan River becoming Transjordan. It would be given to the Hashemite family to control with Jordanian independence coming later in 1946.



When the agreement to give the greater part of British Palestine to the Hashemites was signed by Emir Feisal he promised there would be no more demands on the Jews from the Arabs if they were given this land. However there was continued unrest in Palestine from both Arabs and Jews and the British gave notice that they would pull out of Palestine.

The U.N. partition plan of 1947 called for two nations to be formed out of the remaining 26% of the original British Palestine of 1922.

It was voted to be split into a Jewish nation (around 10-15% of the original British Palestine of 1922) and a new Palestinian nation in addition to the newly independent nation of Jordan.



The Jews accepted the plan and the Arabs rejected it and then the neighbouring Arab nations declared war on the newly formed nation of Israel. Israel held its own militarily and a ceasefire was eventually called in 1949. The Jews had won more territory and now controlled all, rather than part, of the Jezreel Valley as well as the northern coastal region north of Haifa.

The Arabs insisted that the boundaries formed by the Armistice Line of 1949 where Jordan controlled the West Bank, Egypt the Gaza Strip, Syria the Golan Heights and Israel the remainder were not international sovereign boundaries. These boundaries are NOT from 1967 nor were they ever recognised internationally as borders by the United Nations.

No Palestinian nation was formed in 1949. Jordan seized control of the West Bank and Egypt seized control of the Gaza Strip. In the 18 years that both majority Arab countries of Jordan and Egypt controlled the West Bank and Gaza they could have formed a Palestinian nation but never did!

Led by Egypt's Gamal Abdel Nasser, the Arabs mobilized for war against Israel in 1967. Israel pre-emptively struck destroying all of Egypt's air force while still on the ground. Syria joined the war. Israel pleaded with Jordan to stay out of the war but Jordan entered the war. Israel, supported by American military aid, again defeated her Arab neighbours in the 1967 Six Day War.

In the process, to defend herself from future aggression by those Arab nations, Israel captured the Golan Heights from Syria, the Sinai Peninsula and Gaza Strip from Egypt and the West Bank from Jordan (NOT Palestine). Included in the West Bank territory Israel captured Jerusalem in the 1967 Six Day War. Israel, while allowing her people to worship at the Wailing Wall, kept the status quo on the Temple Mount to prevent further Arab hostility.



**Israel BEFORE the 1967 Six Day War
(1949 to 1967)**



**Israel AFTER the 1967 Six Day War
(1967 to 1982)**



By international law the West Bank is disputed territory NOT occupied territory because there was no previously recognised occupant in the territory as not even the other Arab nations recognised the Jordanian occupation as legal.

The area controlled by Israel did not change after the 1973 Yom Kippor War though initially the Arabs regained much of the Sinai and Golan Heights before being pushed back by the Jews with the support of a major arms shipment by the United States in an astonishing war that was dramatic and see-sawed back and forth between the Arabs and the Jews.

Israel has always been willing to trade land for peace. This she did in 1978 when Anwar Sadat of Egypt made a peace treaty with Israel and gave the whole Sinai Peninsula back to Egypt (transferred in 1982) which was a land area larger than Israel today and with oil reserves.

Israel did so again in 2005 when it withdrew its forces and moved out its own people from the Gaza Strip to give to the Palestinians. How did the Palestinians respond to this willing withdrawal by Israel? The Palestinian governing bodies have stepped up their rocket and mortar attacks on Israel from within Gaza and have continued ever since.

Shortly after the 1967 Six Day War the Arab leaders met in Khartoum, Sudan and announced their famous 3 No's in regards to relations with the Jewish state of Israel – No Recognition, No Peace and No Negotiations.

The Palestinian dispute may be a very hard one to solve but it is a simple one to explain. Israel recognises the right of the Palestinians to exist and have a state of their own. The Palestinians and Arabs do not recognise the right of the Jews to exist and have a state of their own!

Their Islamic religious views, based on the Koran, fuel this uncompromising position with those that they consider as infidels. So long as they continue with this religious viewpoint they will never cease in their hatred and uncompromising position with the Jews.

The Palestinians are a mixture of Edom and Ishmael and, as we have seen, God has given them their own inheritance of land in the Middle East but this land does not include the land between the Mediterranean and the Jordan River that God has decreed to the descendants of Israel.

The Millennium and Beyond

Prior to the return of Jesus Christ and the setting up of the Kingdom of God on this earth will be 3 ½ half years of world war known in the Bible as the Great Tribulation. It will be a time of conquest of many nations, captivity and deportation of the nations descended from Israel and great destruction and decimation of this world's population.

It begins with the swift conquest of many Middle East and African nations such as Israel, Egypt, Libya and Ethiopia by the king of the north (**Daniel 11:40-45**), another name for the Beast power, the primary Gentile kingdom noted in the Book of Revelation (**Revelation 13**). Other nations may be conquered in this area but are not listed.

A showdown will then occur between the Beast power based in Europe and the nations descended from the northern kingdom of Israel with the Beast power being victorious and conquering and deporting the nations of Modern Israel (**Isaiah 10:5-8, 20, 11:11-16, Ezekiel 5:1-17, 6:1-11, Revelation 18:11-13**).

The remaining battles will pit the European beast power that has grown rich off the confiscated wealth of the nations it has conquered against a combined Russian and an East Asian alliance for control of the world culminating in the battle that is popularly referred to as the Battle of Armageddon (**Revelation 16**). It's at this point when life on the planet is threatened with complete

annihilation that Jesus Christ will return and fight these nations in Jerusalem who perceive Him as a threat rather than this world's Saviour.

In the aftermath of the battle which Jesus Christ and the heavenly armies will be victorious (**Zechariah 14**), the remnant of the modern nations descended from Israel will be freed from their captivity from the Beast power and return to their original Middle East inheritance. An exodus greater than the original one out of Egypt will occur.

Jeremiah 23:7-8 says that the exodus of the Israelites back to Palestine after Christ's return will be much greater than the one that occurred in Moses' day. When Israel came out of Egypt they numbered around 2 to 3 million people.

Amos 5:1-3 implies that our modern-day Israelite nations will be decimated in the Great Tribulation to where only 1/10 of Israel survives into the millennium. If we combine the peoples of America, Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, NW Europe and the Jews in Palestine there would be around 350 million people. A tenth of that would leave us with 35 million people which is still over 10 times the number of Israelites who came out of Egypt plus they will come from all corners of the earth rather than just out of one country. It will be an enormous exodus!

There are some fascinating parallels between the first exodus out of Egypt and the greater Exodus to come. When God brings back Israel a second time they will come from many directions including Europe and North Africa. Just as God parted the Red Sea for Israel during the first exodus God says that He will part the waters of the Nile for those coming from North Africa as they make their way to Palestine (**Isaiah 11:11-16**). God will bring Israel out of modern Babylon just as He did with Israel out of Egypt. God will cause water to come out of the rocks for them who thirst just as he did at Horeb during the first exodus (**Isaiah 48:20-21**).

Before entering Palestine God will first bring Israel into the wilderness and prepare them for entry into the Holy Land (**Ezekiel 20:33-37**). At Mt Sinai God proposed the old covenant to ancient Israel. When God brings modern Israel into the wilderness for a time before they move into the Holy Land He will propose to them the new covenant to which they will agree to (**Jeremiah 31:31-34**).

This time around God will give Israel the Holy Spirit and they will have the heart to be able to live God's way and keep the terms of the new covenant. God says that He will purge out the rebels from Israel. Just as there was the rebellion of Korah during the first exodus there will be one this time which God will put down (**Ezekiel 20:38**).

In **Ezekiel 36:10** God says: "I will multiply men upon you, all the house of Israel, all of it; and the cities shall be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt."

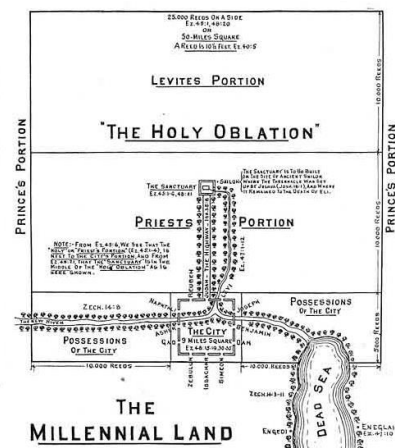
This utopian world won't be created with a magic wand where it is transformed instantly. The pollution and nuclear radiation in this world will probably be removed supernaturally but God says that the cities will be rebuilt. There is value in doing it manually like this. Those who rebuild the cities will be able to take pride in and value what they rebuild with Christ's guidance.

Each of the 12 tribes will be still discernable enough to be given their new Middle East inheritance and each will have one of the 12 apostles as their kings (**Matthew 19:28**). King David, resurrected, immortal, in power and glory, will be king (**Jeremiah 30:9; Ezekiel 34:23-24; 37:24-25**) over all twelve nations of Israel that will be re-united politically (**Ezekiel 37:15-28**).

Jerusalem will become the capital of the world and cities will be rebuilt and the battle-torn land will be rejuvenated and become as the Garden of Eden. A great river will flow east from the new millennial Temple in Jerusalem and flow into the Dead Sea which will heal that body of water and fish will swim in it again (**Ezekiel 47:1-12, Zechariah 14:8**).

The great earthquakes that will rock Jerusalem and the Holy Land (**Revelation 16:18; Zechariah 14:4-8**) will most likely lift up the Great Rift Valley to allow water from the Jordan and Dead Sea to flow all the way down through the Arabah Valley (**Ezekiel 47:8**) and into the Red Sea near Elat helping the desert south of the Dead Sea to be healed. This would also do wonders to the lands of Edom and Moab. Another river goes to the Mediterranean.

Ezekiel describes the new tribal boundaries that will then exist. While Israel will receive her full inheritance as originally described in **Numbers 34** there will be a moderate redistribution of where each tribe will live within Israel's inheritance. That inheritance is described in **Ezekiel 47 and 48**:



Thus says the Lord GOD: "This is the boundary by which you shall divide the land for inheritance among the twelve tribes of Israel. Joseph shall have two portions. And you shall divide equally what I swore to give to your fathers. This land shall fall to you as your inheritance.

This shall be the boundary of the land: On the north side, from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon to Lebo-hamath, and on to Zedad, Berothah, Sibram (which lies on the border between Damascus and Hamath), as far as Hazer-hatticon, which is on the border of Hauran.

So the boundary shall run from the sea to Hazar-enan, which is on the northern border of Damascus, with the border of Hamath to the north. This shall be the north side.

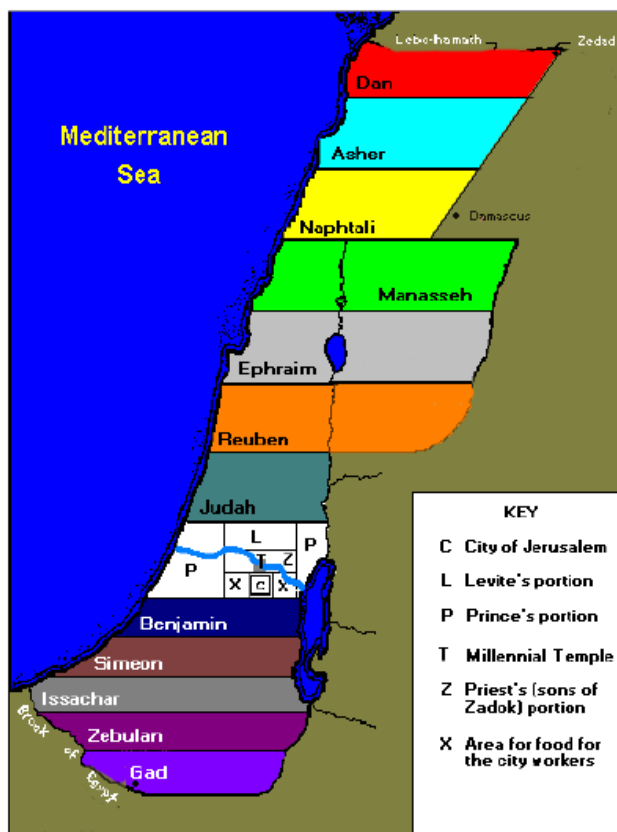
On the east side, the boundary shall run between Hauran and Damascus; along the Jordan between Gilead and the land of Israel; to the eastern sea and as far as Tamar. This shall be the east side. On the south side, it shall run from Tamar as far as the waters of Meribah-kadesh, from there along the Brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. This shall be the south side.

On the west side, the Great Sea shall be the boundary to a point opposite Lebo-hamath. This shall be the west side. So you shall divide this land among you according to the tribes of Israel...

These are the names of the tribes: Beginning at the northern extreme, beside the way of Hethlon to Lebo-hamath, as far as Hazar-enan (which is on the northern border of Damascus over against Hamath), and extending from the east side to the west, Dan, one portion.

Adjoining the territory of Dan, from the east side to the west, Asher, one portion. Adjoining the territory of Asher, from the east side to the west, Naphtali, one portion.

LAND ALLOTMENT IN THE MILLENIUM ACCORDING TO EZEKIEL



Adjoining the territory of Naphtali, from the east side to the west, Manasseh, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Manasseh, from the east side to the west, Ephraim, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Ephraim, from the east side to the west, Reuben, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Reuben, from the east side to the west, Judah, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Judah, from the east side to the west, shall be the portion which you shall set apart, 25,000 cubits in breadth, and in length equal to one of the tribal portions, from the east side to the west, with the sanctuary in the midst of it...The holy portion with the sanctuary of the temple shall be in its midst It shall be separate from the property of the Levites and the property of the city, which are in the midst of that which belongs to the prince. The portion of the prince shall lie between the territory of Judah and the territory of Benjamin.

As for the rest of the tribes: from the east side to the west, Benjamin, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Benjamin, from the east side to the west, Simeon, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Simeon, from the east side to the west, Issachar, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Issachar, from the east side to the west, Zebulun, one portion.
 Adjoining the territory of Zebulun, from the east side to the west, Gad, one portion.
 And adjoining the territory of Gad to the south, the boundary shall run from Tamar to the waters of Meribah-kadesh, from there along the Brook of Egypt to the Great Sea.
 This is the land that you shall allot as an inheritance among the tribes of Israel, and these are their portions, declares the Lord GOD (**Ezekiel 47:13-21, 48:1-8, 21-29**).

One of the main differences is that of the tribes of Issachar, Zebulun and Gad receiving inheritances in the deep south of Israel rather than in the north around the Jezreel Valley and Galilee area where they received their original inheritances upon coming into the land. This area is very arid now but the land will be transformed after Jesus Christ sets up the Kingdom.

There are verses in the prophetic books of the Bible that give indications of deserts being turned into cultivatable land and even new land being raised up from the oceans that will ease the pressure of land and resources that are often fought over in this age. For his comments on these prophecies I'd like to quote from Herbert W. Armstrong's book "Mystery of the Ages":

Today—the greatest and most awesome problem of all is the population explosion. Growing populations in all nations are rapidly outstripping the ability of the world to sustain them. And the areas of the greatest rise in population are the underdeveloped parts of the world—the “have-not” nations of poverty, illiteracy, disease and superstition. Remember, not more than 10 percent of the earth's surface is tillable, or arable, land. And now the latest UN figures indicate the world will double in population in about 34 short years. The daily, ominous pressure of people is one of the truly incomprehensible problems today.

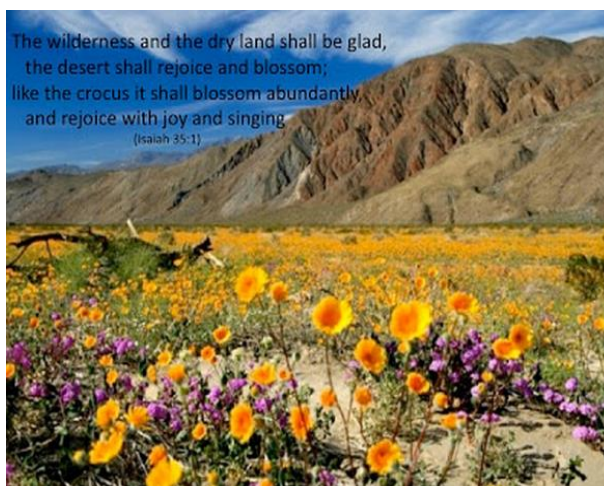
But God has the solution, and how simple it is. Simply make most of the earth cultivatable. Reduce the bare, snow-swept and craggy mountains, raise up some of the deep, arid desert valleys, change the world weather patterns. Make all the deserts green and fertile. Open up huge slices of the earth, like the Kalahari Desert, the Lake Chad basin and the Sahara in Africa, the Gobi Desert in Asia, and the great American deserts. Thaw out the deep ice packs and snowdrifts, the permafrost and tundra from the vast, almost limitless expanses of Antarctica, North America, Greenland, Northern Europe and Siberia...

Then, provide good, gentle rainfall, in right balance, just at the right season. And what happens? Multiple millions of acres of unbelievably fertile, productive, wonderful farmland suddenly become available—just waiting to be discovered, and pioneered. Impossible? In the hands of man—certainly. But look what God promises.

“Fear not, thou worm Jacob, and ye men of Israel; I will help thee, saith the Lord, and thy redeemer, the Holy One of Israel. Behold, I will make thee a new sharp threshing instrument having teeth: thou shalt thresh the mountains, and beat them small, and shalt make the hills as chaff. Thou shalt fan them, and the wind shall carry them away, and the whirlwind shall scatter them: and thou shalt rejoice in the Lord, and shalt glory in the Holy One of Israel.

“When the poor and needy seek water, and there is none, and their tongue faileth for thirst, I the Lord will hear them, I the God of Israel will not forsake them. I will open rivers in high places, and fountains [artesian wells] in the midst of the valleys: I will make the wilderness a pool of water, and the dry land springs of water. I will plant in the wilderness the cedar, the shittah [acacia] tree, and the myrtle, and the oil tree; I will set in the desert the fir tree, and the pine, and the box tree [cypress] together: that they may see, and know, and consider, and understand together, that the hand of the Lord hath done this, and the Holy One of Israel hath created it” **(Isaiah 41:14-20).**

Can you imagine such a fabulous scene? Deserts becoming green, fertile, garden lands of trees, shrubs, bubbling springs and brooks; mountains brought low, and made inhabitable. Notice how God describes these conditions in many parts of the Bible.



“Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons [jackals], where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes” **(Isaiah 35:6-7)...**

God says: “The wilderness and the solitary places shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing...” **(Isaiah 35:1-2).**

Read of the huge earthquakes yet to come that will directly accomplish much of the rehabilitation of the land surfaces. **(See Revelation 16:18; Zechariah 14:4)** God says, “The mountains quake at him, and the hills melt...” **(Nahum 1:5)...**

The lowlands of Europe, Holland in particular, consist to quite an extent of land reclaimed from the sea. Think of the multiple millions of additional acres available to mankind if some of the world’s oceans were reduced in size. And God says they shall be!

Notice it,

“And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dryshod” **(Isaiah. 11:15).**

“Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of the sea [the world’s gold and silver reserves are mostly under the seas] shall be converted unto thee, the forces [wealth, margin] of the Gentiles shall come unto thee” **(Isaiah 60:5).**

But, as we’ve read, God Almighty says he’ll raise many places now covered by waters of the oceans; that he’ll make much more land available. Scientists know most of the earth’s raw materials lie in the strata beneath the depths of the seas. God says this vast wealth will become available for use during the reign of Jesus Christ on this earth. God says the wealth of the world will be centered in Jerusalem, and that the vast rebuilding programs, rehabilitation processes and new-age pioneering that begin will be backed by that wealth.

What if, instead of only 29% of the earth's surface being dry land, 60% of the earth's surface was land? Say, put three or four continents the size of Australia in the Pacific and another one or two in

the Atlantic and Indian Oceans? What if Antarctica was thawed out and we could plant forests and fertile plains all over it? What would it be like to open up the Artesian Basin underneath the deserts of Australia and turn those deserts into beautiful rich farmland?

God's laws such as the Jubilee year law, gleaning and the land sabbath will go a long way towards eliminating poverty in the Kingdom of God. Everyone will have an inheritance of land from God.

The earth is God's (**Psalm 24:1**) and land itself in God's system cannot be hoarded by individuals, companies and governments.

When a person in ancient Israel mismanaged their finances to the point where they had to sell their inheritance they didn't sell the land but the productivity of the land.



If it was 40 years to the next Jubilee then it sold for 40 years worth of productivity; 30 years to the next Jubilee meant it could only be sold for 30 years worth of productivity as opposed to what the market would pay. This would help deflate inflation.

The land could be bought back or redeemed at any time by the person whose inheritance it was or by his immediate family. The rights of the poor had precedence over those rich profiteers who bought it off them in that they could buy the land back at any time and have it restored to them. The Jubilee law (**Leviticus 25:8-17**) helped equalize the wealth of the people where land reverted back to those whose inheritance it was rather than the unfortunate aspect of our society today where the gap between rich and poor is growing ever larger.

In our society today most of the poor have no land with which to grow crops to live off and make a living. In God's system everyone has land with which to grow food for themselves and make a living from. If they mismanage their finances God has provided for that situation with the law allowing them to redeem it at any time when they get their finances in order again and, failing that, it automatically reverted back to such a person or his family in the Jubilee year.

Along with the Jubilee law God has provided another means to support the less fortunate in our society through the laws of gleaning and the land sabbath. Whatever was missed the first time when people harvested the land of its crops they were to leave for the poor (**Leviticus 19:9-10**). Also, every seventh year farmers were to rest their land from being harvested and whatever grew of itself was to be for the poor and their animals (**Leviticus 25:1-7**).

Isaiah prophesied that in the millennium that: "Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit" (**Isaiah 27:6**).

In **Hosea 14:4-6** we read: "I will heal their backsliding, I will love them freely: for my anger has turned away from him. I will be as the dew to Israel: he shall grow as the lily, and lengthen his roots as Lebanon. His branches shall spread, and his beauty shall like an olive tree."



That phrase "his branches shall spread" is also used in **Genesis 49:22** in describing the prophecy of Joseph in the latter days when the British Empire spread all over the earth at the time God began to give the fullness of the birthright blessings to Israel.

Isaiah 49:20 says of Israel in the future that "The children you will have after you have lost the others, will say again in your ears, 'The place is too small for me; Give me a place where I may dwell.'"

Once Israel returns to their Middle East land inheritance after their captivity they will have a population explosion and begin to migrate around the world. This is a little similar to what happened around the time of the industrial revolution. Britain also had a population explosion around the time Britain lost her American colonies but expanded her empire even further than before.

At first, God will leave the Gentile nations alone while He prepares Israel in the wilderness and then establishes them in the Holy Land. This will be part of the reason why Gog and Magog try and conquer Israel at the beginning of the millennium but to no avail. God will defeat these Gentile nations on behalf of the repentant Israelites who have come back from captivity to the land of Palestine (**Ezekiel 38-39**).

Of Israel in the millennium God says: "For you shall expand to the right and to the left, and your descendants will inherit the nations" (**Isaiah 54:3**).

In **Isaiah 14:1-2** God also says:

"For the LORD will have mercy on Jacob, and will still choose Israel, and settle them in their own land. The strangers will be joined with them, and they will cling to the House of Jacob. Then people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them for servants and maids in the land of the LORD; they will take them captive whose captives they were, and rule over their oppressors".

This sounds similar to what happened after World War II when the British, French and Americans (along with the Russians) occupied Germany for a time. America, in particular, through the Marshall Plan helped rebuild Germany before the occupying forces pulled out once West Germany was rebuilt.

God may use Israel to go into other nations and assist the spirit-born members of God's church in His gradual process of bringing the Gentile nations to repentance. Israel may assist in helping rebuild their cities, develop their civil infrastructure and teach them God's values, by example, as God's government gradually expands its influence over the earth (**Psalms 47**).

When God says "then people [the Gentiles] shall take them [Israel], and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them for servants and maids" in **Isaiah 14:2**, it hints at something that occurred in the days of the British Empire.

Many African nations invited the British to come in and rule them so they could be protected from neighbouring African tribes and other European imperial powers and became known as protectorates. The British, in turn, developed their agricultural system, civil infrastructure, roads and railways and gave their economies a wider market in which to trade their goods.

The African protectorates in the Empire originally welcomed the British presence. After World War II this all changed with the rise of African nationalism which helped to rush the end of British rule quickly rather than wisely.

In the wake of decolonization, many of the African nations that are a part of the Commonwealth are, sadly, worse off economically than they were before the British pulled out. Sadly, they have also become the prey of despots since gaining independence. In God's kingdom God will finally bring true peace and prosperity to these developing nations.

Isaiah 60:10-14 tells of how those Gentiles who will be ruled by Israel for a time will help build up the walls of Jerusalem.

“The sons of foreigners shall build up your walls, and their kings shall minister to you: for in my wrath I struck you, but in my favor I have had mercy on you. Therefore your gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day or night; that men may bring to you the wealth of the Gentiles, and their kings in procession.

“For the nation and kingdom which will not serve you shall perish; And those nations shall be utterly ruined...Also the sons of those who afflicted you shall come bowing to you; and all those who despised you shall fall prostrate at the soles of thy feet; and they shall call you, The city of the LORD, The Zion of the Holy One of Israel”.

In **Deuteronomy 32:8** we read that God set the boundaries of the peoples and divided to the nations their inheritance.

God will probably do the same in the millennium with the nations and direct the peoples back to the national inheritance that He has for each race and nation. Those inheritances will likely be augmented by new land that God will raise up from the sea.

Herbert W. Armstrong in his book “Mystery of the Ages” offers the following speculation about redirecting the nations and races of the world back to their national inheritances:

In Noah's day, the chief cause of the violence and chaos of world conditions was racial hatreds, interracial marriages, and racial violence caused by man's efforts toward integration and amalgamation of races, contrary to God's laws.

God had set the boundary lines for the nations and the races at the beginning (**Deuteronomy 32:8-9; Acts 17:26**). But men had refused to remain in the lands to which God had assigned them...For 100 years Noah had preached God's ways to the people—but they didn't heed.

Noah merely preached to people in his human lifetime. But Noah, in the resurrection, immortal, in power and glory, will be given the power to enforce God's ways in regard to race...

[Maybe Noah will] head a vast project of the relocation of the races and nations, within the boundaries God has set, for their own best good, happiness and richest blessings. This will be a tremendous operation. It will require great and vast organization, reinforced with power to move whole nations and races. This time, peoples and nations will move where God has planned for them, and no defiance will be tolerated.

In Isaiah 2:4 we read that in the millennium when Jesus Christ sets up the Kingdom of God on earth that “He shall judge between the nations, and shall decide disputes for many peoples.” This, no doubt, will include deciding on which peoples own which lands around the world.

In **Zechariah 14:16-19** we read: “And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the Feast of Tabernacles.

“And it shall be, that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth [including Gentile nations such as the Arabs who will initially resist] unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain. And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, that have no rain; there shall be the plague, wherewith the Lord will smite the heathen that come not up to keep the Feast of Tabernacles. This shall be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the Feast of Tabernacles”.

Eventually with the literal presence of Jesus Christ and His spiritual family right there in Jerusalem and around the world the Arabs will come around and begin to understand how deceived they have been.

The “Arabs” and the other Muslim nations will come to see they had all been deceived by Satan and his false teachings. They will repent and then go up to Jerusalem to worship the true God (Isaiah 65:23-24; Zechariah 14:9-11, 16-21)! At last, their fanatical anti-Semitism will dissipate and all peoples will learn to respect and love one another!

In **Zechariah 8:20-23** we read: “Thus says the LORD of hosts: ‘Peoples shall yet come, inhabitants of many cities; The inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, “Let us continue to go and pray before the LORD, and seek the LORD of hosts. I myself will go also.” Yes, many peoples and strong nations shall come to seek the LORD of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the LORD.’ Thus says the LORD of hosts: ‘In those days ten men from every language of the nations shall grasp the sleeve of a Jewish man, saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you”’.

After the Great White Throne Judgment period we read in Revelation 21 about how God the Father will come and dwell with mankind on earth and bring New Jerusalem with Him which He has been preparing for just this moment. We are told in the Book of Revelation that the New Jerusalem is absolutely massive. It is 1500 miles by 1500 miles in area. The New Jerusalem will literally be two thirds of the area of Australia!

George Kackos in a Good News article described the New Jerusalem this way:

It defies human imagination. Containing the glory of God and illuminated like a jasper stone, it glows in deep, rich, blue-green tones with the transparency of crystal. The walls have 12 gates, with the names of the tribes of Israel written upon them and 12 angels present. There are three gates in each of the four walls. The 12 foundations of the city wall contain the names of the 12 apostles (**Revelation 11:14**).

[One] possibility is that the city is shaped like a pyramid, with God the Father and Christ appearing in the apex. The pyramidal structure is unique architecturally—the design may have originally come from God Himself. Other spirit beings may occupy areas at lower heights, depending on their status. Whatever the shape, New Jerusalem is a huge city. A spectacular example of God's handiwork is that the city is made of gold that appears as clear glass (**Revelation 21:18**).

The walls encompassing New Jerusalem are 216 feet high...Supporting the walls are an array of beautiful stones. Visiting a gem dealer would help you appreciate the beauty of the jasper [green], sapphire [blue], chalcedony [green], emerald [green], sardonyx [red & white], sardius [red], chrysolite [yellow], beryl [green], topaz [greenish gold], chrysoprase [green], jacinth [bluish purple] and amethyst [purple] that are used (**Revelation 21:17-20**).

Though hard to imagine, each gate is made from a single pearl. That's quite a contrast to the small pearls we see today. A street is described as being made of pure gold having the transparency of glass (Good News, January 1981, article: 'After the Millennium - New Heavens and a New Earth')

Planet Earth will become the headquarters of the universe after God the Father comes down to dwell with mankind. From having dominion over this earth, those of mankind born into God's Family will then own much more land than their portion here on this earth.

NEW JERUSALEM



Herbert Armstrong's final book "Mystery of the Ages" from the last chapter about the Kingdom of God. He writes the following:

In the book of Hebrews we read: "For unto the angels hath he [God] not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak" (**Hebrews 2:5**). The theme of the context here is "the world to come." There is but one earth, but the Bible speaks of three worlds, ages or civilizations on the earth - the "world that then was" (the antediluvian world from Adam to Noah); this "present evil world" (from the Flood until Christ's return, yet future); and "the world to come" (which will start when Christ comes and sets up the kingdom of God). This verse speaks of angels as if the world had been put in subjection to angels...

Continue on in **verse 6**: "But one in a certain place testified, saying " Then follows a quotation from the first six verses only of the eighth Psalm. In this psalm, David continued showing specifically that God has now placed in subjection under man the solid earth, the earth's atmosphere or air, and the sea. But now the writer of the book of Hebrews is inspired to expand David's prophecy to add something radically different -something to happen in the world to come! This revealed knowledge of God's purpose for mankind - of man's incredible awesome potential staggers the imagination...

But now let's see what is said in this passage in Hebrews, beginning where Hebrews leaves off quoting the eighth Psalm: "Thou hast put all things in subjection under his [man's] feet. For in that he [God] put all in subjection under him [man], he [God] left NOTHING that is not put under him" (**Hebrews 2:8**). Is it possible God could mean what he says ("all things")? Nothing excluded? In the first chapter, the Moffatt translation of the Bible renders the Greek word translated "all things" as "the universe" (verse 8).

In other words, for those willing to believe what God says, he says that he has decreed the entire universe – with all its galaxies, its countless suns and planets everything - will

be put under man's subjection. But wait a moment! Before you disbelieve, read the next words in the same eighth verse: "But now we see not yet all things [the endless universe) put under him [man]." Remember (verse 5), this is speaking of the "world to come" - not today's world.

But what do we see now, today? "But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels [or, "for a little while lower") for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour." Man, other than Christ, is NOT YET "crowned with glory and honour." But see how Christ is already crowned with glory and honor.

Continue: "For it became him, for whom are all things [the entire universe) and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings...for which cause he [Christ) is not ashamed to call them brethren" **(verses 10-11)**. In other words, Christians having God's Spirit are joint heirs with Christ to INHERIT all that Christ already has inherited. He is now in glory! He has already inherited the entire universe. He sustains it by his power. Man, if he is converted, having God's Holy Spirit (Romans 8:9), is now only an HEIR - not yet a possessor.

In **Romans 8:16-17** it states that "we are the children of God: and if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ".

I'd like to quote from a World Tomorrow telecast called Man's Destiny in which David Albert summarises our incredible human potential with the following words:

Man doesn't rule the universe at the moment and frankly there are a good many things on this planet that man does not rule. Man does not make or control the weather. He can't stop floods or the incredible forces of earthquakes or hurricanes and more importantly man doesn't even rule his nature and can't stop wars, crime and unhappy relationships. He can't stop disease and starvation all over the world.

There are a good many things that he can't control on this earth but once man's nature is changed by God's power God will make man ruler over all things - over the universe and its laws and forces including the power to make life which he is utterly incapable of doing now. He can't even create a single living blade of grass out of non living matter but man will be given power and rulership with God over the vast, limitless universe when God's perfect character is placed in him...

It's going to take power to bring about the vast changes on this earth and then this universe that God has planned... This earth when God beautifies it in the millennium will be, like Christ is for our salvation, the prototype for what God plans for this universe. It's going to be more fantastic than any science-fiction show like Star Wars or Star Trek.

The universe is currently in a state of decay. It is running down and is eagerly awaiting our birth into God's family so it can be set free from that decay **(Romans 8:18-23)**. Once we are finished fixing up planet Earth, the whole universe with its billions and billions of stars and planets awaits us. God is in the creating business and we will join the family business of creating and beautifying the entire universe for all eternity with God the Father and Jesus Christ.

Herbert Armstrong finished his last book "Mystery of the Ages summing up what then lies ahead with the following words:

With God's great master plan of seven thousand years finally completed -- the mystery of the ages finally revealed, and with the re-creating of the vast universe and eternity lying ahead, we come finally to THE BEGINNING! (p.296-297).